



# **System Administration Guide: Naming and Directory Services (DNS, NIS, and LDAP)**

Beta



Sun Microsystems, Inc.  
4150 Network Circle  
Santa Clara, CA 95054  
U.S.A.

Part No: 819-3194-07  
December 2009

Copyright 2009 Sun Microsystems, Inc. 4150 Network Circle, Santa Clara, CA 95054 U.S.A. All rights reserved.

Sun Microsystems, Inc. has intellectual property rights relating to technology embodied in the product that is described in this document. In particular, and without limitation, these intellectual property rights may include one or more U.S. patents or pending patent applications in the U.S. and in other countries.

U.S. Government Rights – Commercial software. Government users are subject to the Sun Microsystems, Inc. standard license agreement and applicable provisions of the FAR and its supplements.

This distribution may include materials developed by third parties.

Parts of the product may be derived from Berkeley BSD systems, licensed from the University of California. UNIX is a registered trademark in the U.S. and other countries, exclusively licensed through X/Open Company, Ltd.

Sun, Sun Microsystems, the Sun logo, the Solaris logo, the Java Coffee Cup logo, docs.sun.com, Java, and Solaris are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. or its subsidiaries in the U.S. and other countries. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries. Products bearing SPARC trademarks are based upon an architecture developed by Sun Microsystems, Inc.

The OPEN LOOK and Sun™ Graphical User Interface was developed by Sun Microsystems, Inc. for its users and licensees. Sun acknowledges the pioneering efforts of Xerox in researching and developing the concept of visual or graphical user interfaces for the computer industry. Sun holds a non-exclusive license from Xerox to the Xerox Graphical User Interface, which license also covers Sun's licensees who implement OPEN LOOK GUIs and otherwise comply with Sun's written license agreements.

Products covered by and information contained in this publication are controlled by U.S. Export Control laws and may be subject to the export or import laws in other countries. Nuclear, missile, chemical or biological weapons or nuclear maritime end uses or end users, whether direct or indirect, are strictly prohibited. Export or reexport to countries subject to U.S. embargo or to entities identified on U.S. export exclusion lists, including, but not limited to, the denied persons and specially designated nationals lists is strictly prohibited.

DOCUMENTATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ALL EXPRESS OR IMPLIED CONDITIONS, REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES, INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT, ARE DISCLAIMED, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT THAT SUCH DISCLAIMERS ARE HELD TO BE LEGALLY INVALID.

---

Copyright 2009 Sun Microsystems, Inc. 4150 Network Circle, Santa Clara, CA 95054 U.S.A. Tous droits réservés.

Sun Microsystems, Inc. détient les droits de propriété intellectuelle relatifs à la technologie incorporée dans le produit qui est décrit dans ce document. En particulier, et ce sans limitation, ces droits de propriété intellectuelle peuvent inclure un ou plusieurs brevets américains ou des applications de brevet en attente aux Etats-Unis et dans d'autres pays.

Cette distribution peut comprendre des composants développés par des tierces personnes.

Certains composants de ce produit peuvent être dérivés du logiciel Berkeley BSD, licenciés par l'Université de Californie. UNIX est une marque déposée aux Etats-Unis et dans d'autres pays; elle est licenciée exclusivement par X/Open Company, Ltd.

Sun, Sun Microsystems, le logo Sun, le logo Solaris, le logo Java Coffee Cup, docs.sun.com, Java et Solaris sont des marques de fabrique ou des marques déposées de Sun Microsystems, Inc., ou ses filiales, aux Etats-Unis et dans d'autres pays. Toutes les marques SPARC sont utilisées sous licence et sont des marques de fabrique ou des marques déposées de SPARC International, Inc. aux Etats-Unis et dans d'autres pays. Les produits portant les marques SPARC sont basés sur une architecture développée par Sun Microsystems, Inc.

L'interface d'utilisation graphique OPEN LOOK et Sun a été développée par Sun Microsystems, Inc. pour ses utilisateurs et licenciés. Sun reconnaît les efforts de pionniers de Xerox pour la recherche et le développement du concept des interfaces d'utilisation visuelle ou graphique pour l'industrie de l'informatique. Sun détient une licence non exclusive de Xerox sur l'interface d'utilisation graphique Xerox, cette licence couvrant également les licenciés de Sun qui mettent en place l'interface d'utilisation graphique OPEN LOOK et qui, en outre, se conforment aux licences écrites de Sun.

Les produits qui font l'objet de cette publication et les informations qu'il contient sont régis par la législation américaine en matière de contrôle des exportations et peuvent être soumis au droit d'autres pays dans le domaine des exportations et importations. Les utilisations finales, ou utilisateurs finaux, pour des armes nucléaires, des missiles, des armes chimiques ou biologiques ou pour le nucléaire maritime, directement ou indirectement, sont strictement interdites. Les exportations ou réexportations vers des pays sous embargo des Etats-Unis, ou vers des entités figurant sur les listes d'exclusion d'exportation américaines, y compris, mais de manière non exclusive, la liste de personnes qui font objet d'un ordre de ne pas participer, d'une façon directe ou indirecte, aux exportations des produits ou des services qui sont régis par la législation américaine en matière de contrôle des exportations et la liste de ressortissants spécifiquement désignés, sont rigoureusement interdites.

LA DOCUMENTATION EST FOURNIE "EN L'ETAT" ET TOUTES AUTRES CONDITIONS, DECLARATIONS ET GARANTIES EXPRESSES OU TACITES SONT FORMELLEMENT EXCLUES, DANS LA MESURE AUTORISEE PAR LA LOI APPLICABLE, Y COMPRIS NOTAMMENT TOUTE GARANTIE IMPLICITE RELATIVE A LA QUALITE MARCHANDE, A L'APTITUDE A UNE UTILISATION PARTICULIERE OU A L'ABSENCE DE CONTREFACON.

# Contents

---

<b>Preface</b> .....	15
<b>Part I About Naming and Directory Services</b> .....	21
<b>1 Naming and Directory Services (Overview)</b> .....	23
What Is a Naming Service? .....	23
Solaris Naming Services .....	29
Description of the DNS Naming Service .....	29
Description of Multicast DNS and Service Discovery .....	29
Description of the /etc Files Naming Service .....	30
Description of the NIS Naming Service .....	30
Description of the LDAP Naming Services .....	30
Naming Services: A Quick Comparison .....	31
<b>2 The Name Service Switch (Overview)</b> .....	33
About the Name Service Switch .....	33
Format of the nsswitch.conf File .....	34
Comments in nsswitch.conf Files .....	37
Keyserver and publickey Entry in the Switch File .....	38
The nsswitch.conf Template Files .....	38
The Default Switch Template Files .....	39
The nsswitch.conf File .....	41
Selecting a Different Configuration File .....	42
▼ How to Modify the Name Service Switch .....	42
DNS and Internet Access .....	43
IPv6 and Solaris Naming Services .....	43
Ensuring Compatibility With +/- Syntax .....	44

	The Switch File and Password Information .....	44
<b>Part II</b>	<b>DNS Setup and Administration .....</b>	<b>45</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>DNS Setup and Administration (Reference) .....</b>	<b>47</b>
	Related Materials .....	47
	Migrating From BIND 8 to BIND 9 .....	48
	DNS and the Service Management Facility .....	49
	Implementing rndc .....	50
	The rndc.conf Configuration File .....	50
	Differences in the Control Channels .....	51
	Commands of BIND 9 rndc .....	51
	BIND 9 Commands, Files, Tools, and Options .....	52
	BIND 9 Tools and Configuration Files .....	52
	Comparison of BIND 8 and BIND 9 Commands and Files .....	53
	Descriptions of Command and Option Changes .....	53
	The named.conf Options .....	54
	Statements in BIND 9 .....	56
	Summary of the named.conf Options .....	58
	Multicast DNS and Service Discovery .....	65
	Multicast DNS .....	65
	Service Discovery .....	65
	Administering mDNS .....	65
	mDNS Deployment .....	65
	Enable mDNS .....	66
	Edit nsswitch.conf .....	66
	Review Errors or Messages .....	66
	mDNS and dns-sd Tool .....	66
<b>Part III</b>	<b>NIS Setup and Administration .....</b>	<b>69</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Network Information Service (NIS) (Overview) .....</b>	<b>71</b>
	NIS Introduction .....	71
	NIS Architecture .....	72

---

NIS Machine Types .....	73
NIS Servers .....	73
NIS Clients .....	73
NIS Elements .....	74
The NIS Domain .....	74
NIS Daemons .....	74
NIS Utilities .....	75
NIS Maps .....	75
NIS-Related Commands .....	79
NIS Binding .....	81
Server-List Mode .....	81
Broadcast Mode .....	81
<b>5 Setting Up and Configuring NIS Service .....</b>	<b>83</b>
Configuring NIS Task Map .....	83
Before You Begin Configuring NIS .....	84
NIS and the Service Management Facility .....	84
Planning Your NIS Domain .....	85
Identify Your NIS Servers and Clients .....	86
Preparing the Master Server .....	86
Source Files Directory .....	86
Passwd Files and Namespace Security .....	86
Preparing Source Files for Conversion to NIS Maps .....	87
Preparing the Makefile .....	89
Setting Up the Master Server With <code>ypinit</code> .....	90
Master Supporting Multiple NIS Domains .....	91
Starting and Stopping NIS Service on the Master Server .....	92
Starting NIS Service Automatically .....	92
Starting and Stopping NIS From the Command Line .....	92
Setting Up NIS Slave Servers .....	93
Preparing a Slave Server .....	93
Setting Up a Slave Server .....	93
Setting Up NIS Clients .....	95

---

<b>6</b>	<b>Administering NIS (Tasks)</b> .....	97
	Password Files and Namespace Security .....	97
	Administering NIS Users .....	98
	▼ How to Add a New NIS User to an NIS Domain .....	98
	Setting User Passwords .....	100
	NIS Netgroups .....	100
	Working With NIS Maps .....	101
	Obtaining Map Information .....	102
	Changing a Map's Master Server .....	103
	Modifying Configuration Files .....	104
	Modifying and Using the <code>Makefile</code> .....	105
	Modifying <code>Makefile</code> Entries .....	106
	Updating and Modifying Existing Maps .....	107
	▼ How to Update Maps Supplied With the Default Set .....	108
	Maintaining Updated Maps .....	108
	Modifying Default Maps .....	111
	Using <code>makedbm</code> to Modify a Non-Default Map .....	111
	Creating New Maps from Text Files .....	111
	Adding Entries to a File-Based Map .....	111
	Creating Maps From Standard Input .....	112
	Modifying Maps Made From Standard Input .....	112
	Adding a Slave Server .....	113
	▼ How to Add a Slave Server .....	113
	Using NIS With C2 Security .....	114
	Binding to a Specific NIS Server .....	115
	Changing a Machine's NIS Domain .....	115
	▼ How to Change a Machine's NIS Domain Name .....	115
	Using NIS in Conjunction With DNS .....	116
	▼ How to Configure Machine Name and Address Lookup Through NIS and DNS .....	116
	Dealing with Mixed NIS Domains .....	117
	Turning Off NIS Services .....	117
<b>7</b>	<b>NIS Troubleshooting</b> .....	119
	NIS Binding Problems .....	119
	Symptoms .....	119

---

NIS Problems Affecting One Client .....	120
NIS Problems Affecting Many Clients .....	123
<b>Part IV LDAP Naming Services Setup and Administration .....</b>	<b>127</b>
<b>8 Introduction to LDAP Naming Services (Overview/Reference) .....</b>	<b>129</b>
Audience Assumptions .....	129
Suggested Background Reading .....	130
Additional Prerequisite .....	130
LDAP Naming Services Compared to Other Naming Services .....	130
Advantages of LDAP Naming Services .....	131
Restrictions of LDAP Naming Services .....	131
LDAP Naming Services Setup (Task Map) .....	131
<b>9 LDAP Basic Components and Concepts (Overview) .....</b>	<b>133</b>
LDAP Data Interchange Format (LDIF) .....	133
Using Fully Qualified Domain Names With LDAP .....	137
Default Directory Information Tree (DIT) .....	137
Default LDAP Schema .....	138
Service Search Descriptors (SSDs) and Schema Mapping .....	138
Description of SSDs .....	139
LDAP Client Profiles .....	141
Client Profile Attributes .....	141
Local Client Attributes .....	142
ldap_cachemgr Daemon .....	143
LDAP Naming Services Security Model .....	144
Introduction .....	144
Transport Layer Security (TLS) .....	146
Assigning Client Credential Levels .....	147
Choosing Authentication Methods .....	150
Pluggable Authentication Methods .....	153
Account Management .....	157

<b>10</b>	<b>Planning Requirements for LDAP Naming Services (Tasks)</b> .....	161
	LDAP Planning Overview .....	161
	Planning the LDAP Network Model .....	161
	Planning the Directory Information Tree (DIT) .....	162
	Multiple Directory Servers .....	163
	Data Sharing With Other Applications .....	163
	Choosing the Directory Suffix .....	163
	LDAP and Replica Servers .....	163
	Planning the LDAP Security Model .....	164
	Planning Client Profiles and Default Attribute Values for LDAP .....	166
	Planning the LDAP Data Population .....	166
	▼ How to Populate a Server With host Entries Using ldapaddent .....	167
<b>11</b>	<b>Setting Up Sun Java System Directory Server With LDAP Clients (Tasks)</b> .....	169
	Configuring Sun Java System Directory Server by Using idsconfig .....	170
	Creating a Checklist Based on Your Server Installation .....	170
	Schema Definitions .....	172
	Using Browsing Indexes .....	172
	Using Service Search Descriptors to Modify Client Access to Various Services .....	172
	Setting Up SSDs Using idsconfig .....	173
	Running idsconfig .....	174
	▼ How to Configure Sun Java System Directory Server by Using idsconfig .....	174
	Example idsconfig Setup .....	175
	Populating the Directory Server Using ldapaddent .....	179
	▼ How to Populate Sun Java System Directory Server With User Password Data Using ldapaddent .....	180
	Managing Printer Entries .....	180
	Adding Printers .....	180
	Using lpget .....	181
	Populating the Directory Server With Additional Profiles .....	181
	▼ How to Populate the Directory Server With Additional Profiles Using ldapclient .....	181
	Configuring the Directory Server to Enable Account Management .....	182
	For Clients That Use pam_ldap .....	182
	For Clients That Use pam_unix .....	184
	Migrating Your Sun Java System Directory Server .....	186



<b>12</b>	<b>Setting Up LDAP Clients (Tasks)</b> .....	187
	Prerequisites to LDAP Client Setup .....	187
	LDAP and the Service Management Facility .....	188
	Initializing an LDAP Client .....	189
	Using Profiles to Initialize a Client .....	190
	Using Per-User Credentials .....	190
	Using Proxy Credentials .....	192
	Enabling Shadow Updating in LDAP .....	193
	Initializing a Client Manually .....	194
	Modifying a Manual Client Configuration .....	195
	Uninitializing a Client .....	195
	Setting Up TLS Security .....	196
	Configuring PAM .....	197
	Retrieving LDAP Naming Services Information .....	199
	Listing All LDAP Containers .....	199
	Listing All User Entry Attributes .....	200
	Customizing the LDAP Client Environment .....	200
	Modifying the <code>nsswitch.conf</code> File for LDAP .....	200
	Enabling DNS With LDAP .....	201
<b>13</b>	<b>LDAP Troubleshooting (Reference)</b> .....	203
	Monitoring LDAP Client Status .....	203
	Verifying <code>ldap_cachemgr</code> Is Running .....	203
	Checking the Current Profile Information .....	204
	Verifying Basic Client-Server Communication .....	205
	Checking Server Data From a Non-Client Machine .....	205
	LDAP Configuration Problems and Solutions .....	206
	Unresolved Hostname .....	206
	Unable to Reach Systems in the LDAP Domain Remotely .....	206
	Login Does Not Work .....	206
	Lookup Too Slow .....	207
	<code>ldapclient</code> Cannot Bind to Server .....	207
	Using <code>ldap_cachemgr</code> for Debugging .....	208
	<code>ldapclient</code> Hangs During Setup .....	208

---

<b>14 LDAP General Reference (Reference)</b> .....	209
Blank Checklists .....	209
LDAP Upgrade Information .....	210
Compatibility .....	210
Running the <code>ldap_cachemgr</code> Daemon .....	211
New automount Schema .....	211
pam_ldap Changes .....	211
LDAP Commands .....	212
General LDAP Tools .....	212
LDAP Tools Requiring LDAP Naming Services .....	213
Example <code>pam.conf</code> File for <code>pam_ldap</code> .....	213
Example <code>pam.conf</code> file for <code>pam_ldap</code> Configured for Account Management .....	215
IETF Schemas for LDAP .....	217
RFC 2307 Network Information Service Schema .....	217
Mail Alias Schema .....	223
Directory User Agent Profile (DUAProfile) Schema .....	224
Solaris Schemas .....	226
Solaris Projects Schema .....	226
Role-Based Access Control and Execution Profile Schema .....	227
Internet Print Protocol Information for LDAP .....	228
Internet Print Protocol (IPP) Attributes .....	228
Internet Print Protocol (IPP) ObjectClasses .....	235
Sun Printer Attributes .....	237
Sun Printer ObjectClasses .....	238
Generic Directory Server Requirements for LDAP .....	238
Default Filters Used by LDAP Naming Services .....	238
<b>15 Transitioning From NIS to LDAP (Overview/Tasks)</b> .....	243
NIS-to-LDAP Service Overview .....	243
NIS-to-LDAP Tools and the Service Management Facility .....	244
NIS-to-LDAP Audience Assumptions .....	244
When Not to Use the NIS-to-LDAP Service .....	245
Effects of the NIS-to-LDAP Service on Users .....	245
NIS-to-LDAP Transition Terminology .....	246
NIS-to-LDAP Commands, Files, and Maps .....	247

Supported Standard Mappings .....	247
Transitioning From NIS to LDAP (Task Map) .....	248
Prerequisites for the NIS-to-LDAP Transition .....	249
Setting Up the NIS-to-LDAP Service .....	250
▼ How to Set Up the N2L Service With Standard Mappings .....	251
▼ How to Set Up the N2L Service With Custom or Nonstandard Mappings .....	253
Examples of Custom Maps .....	255
NIS-to-LDAP Best Practices With Sun Java System Directory Server .....	257
Creating Virtual List View Indexes With Sun Java System Directory Server .....	257
Avoiding Server Timeouts With Sun Java System Directory Server .....	258
Avoiding Buffer Overruns With Sun Java System Directory Server .....	259
NIS-to-LDAP Restrictions .....	259
NIS-to-LDAP Troubleshooting .....	260
Common LDAP Error Messages .....	260
NIS-to-LDAP Issues .....	261
Reverting to NIS .....	264
▼ How to Revert to Maps Based on Old Source Files .....	264
▼ How to Revert to Maps Based on Current DIT Contents .....	265
<b>Part V Active Directory Naming Service .....</b>	<b>267</b>
<b>16 Setting Up Solaris Active Directory Clients .....</b>	<b>269</b>
Overview of the nss_ad Naming Service Module .....	269
Configuring the nss_ad Naming Service Module .....	270
Password Updates .....	272
How the nss_ad Naming Service Module Retrieves Data From AD .....	272
Retrieving passwd Information .....	272
Retrieving shadow Information .....	273
Retrieving group Information .....	273
<b>Glossary .....</b>	<b>275</b>
<b>Index .....</b>	<b>281</b>



# Examples

---

EXAMPLE 2-1	NIS Switch File Template .....	39
EXAMPLE 2-2	Files Switch File Template .....	40
EXAMPLE 2-3	LDAP Switch File Template .....	40
EXAMPLE 3-1	Sample rndc . conf File .....	50
EXAMPLE 3-2	Sample named . conf File Entry for rndc .....	50
EXAMPLE 6-1	ypxfr_1perday Shell Script .....	109
EXAMPLE 11-1	Running idsconfig for the Example, Inc. Network .....	175



# Preface

---

*Solaris Administration Guide: Naming and Directory Services (DNS, NIS and LDAP)* describes the setup and administration of the Solaris™ Operating System (Solaris OS) naming and directory services: DNS, NIS, and LDAP. This guide is part of System and Network Administration set for the current Solaris release.

---

**Note** – This Solaris release supports systems that use the SPARC® and x86 families of processor architectures: UltraSPARC®, SPARC64, AMD64, Pentium, and Xeon EM64T. The supported systems appear in the *Solaris OS: Hardware Compatibility Lists* at <http://www.sun.com/bigadmin/hcl>. This document cites any implementation differences between the platform types.

In this document these x86 related terms mean the following:

- “x86” refers to the larger family of 64-bit and 32-bit x86 compatible products.
- “x64” points out specific 64-bit information about AMD64 or EM64T systems.
- “32-bit x86” points out specific 32-bit information about x86 based systems.

For supported systems, see the *Solaris OS: Hardware Compatibility Lists*.

---

## Who Should Use This Book

This guide is written for experienced system and network administrators.

Although this book introduces networking concepts relevant to Solaris naming and directory services, it explains neither the networking fundamentals nor the administration tools in the Solaris OS.

## How This Book Is Organized

This guide is divided into parts according to the respective naming services.

Part I, “About Naming and Directory Services”

Part II, “DNS Setup and Administration”

Part III, “NIS Setup and Administration”

Part IV, “LDAP Naming Services Setup and Administration”

Part V, “Active Directory Naming Service”

## How the System Administration Guides Are Organized

Here is a list of the topics that are covered by the System Administration Guides.

Book Title	Topics
<i>System Administration Guide: Basic Administration</i>	User accounts and groups, server and client support, shutting down and booting a system, managing services, and managing software (packages and patches)
<i>System Administration Guide: Advanced Administration</i>	Terminals and modems, system resources (disk quotas, accounting, and crontabs), system processes, and troubleshooting Solaris software problems
<i>System Administration Guide: Devices and File Systems</i>	Removable media, disks and devices, file systems, and backing up and restoring data
<i>System Administration Guide: IP Services</i>	TCP/IP network administration, IPv4 and IPv6 address administration, DHCP, IPsec, IKE, Solaris IP filter, Mobile IP, and IPQoS
<i>System Administration Guide: Naming and Directory Services (DNS, NIS, and LDAP)</i>	DNS, NIS, and LDAP naming and directory services, including transitioning from NIS to LDAP
<i>System Administration Guide: Network Interfaces and Network Virtualization</i>	Networking stack, NIC driver property configuration, network interface configuration, administration of VLANs and link aggregations, IP networking multipathing (IPMP), WiFi wireless networking configuration, and virtual NICs (VNICs).
<i>System Administration Guide: Network Services</i>	Web cache servers, time-related services, network file systems (NFS and Autofs), mail, SLP, and PPP



Book Title	Topics
<i>System Administration Guide: Security Services</i>	Auditing, device management, file security, BART, Kerberos services, PAM, Solaris Cryptographic Framework, privileges, RBAC, SASL, and Solaris Secure Shell
<i>System Administration Guide: Solaris Containers-Resource Management and Solaris Zones</i>	Resource management features, which enable you to control how applications use available system resources; zones software partitioning technology, which virtualizes operating system services to create an isolated environment for running applications; and virtualization using Sun™ xVM hypervisor technology, which supports multiple operating system instances simultaneously
<i>Solaris CIFS Administration Guide</i>	Solaris CIFS service, which enables you to configure a Solaris system to make CIFS shares available to CIFS clients; and native identity mapping services, which enables you to map user and group identities between Solaris systems and Windows systems
<i>Solaris ZFS Administration Guide</i>	ZFS storage pool and file system creation and management, snapshots, clones, backups, using access control lists (ACLs) to protect ZFS files, using ZFS on a Solaris system with zones installed, emulated volumes, and troubleshooting and data recovery
<i>Solaris Trusted Extensions Administrator's Procedures</i>	System installation, configuration, and administration that is specific to Solaris Trusted Extensions
<i>System Administration Guide: Solaris Printing</i>	Solaris printing topics and tasks, using services, tools, protocols, and technologies to set up and administer printing services and printers

## Related Books

- Sun Java System Directory Server *Deployment Guide*, which is included with the Sun Java Enterprise System documentation
- Sun Java System Directory Server *Administration Guide*, which is included with the Sun Java Enterprise System documentation
- *DNS and Bind*, by Cricket Liu and Paul Albitz, (4th Edition, O'Reilly, 2001)
- *Understanding and Deploying LDAP Directory Services*, by Timothy A. Howes, Ph.D. and Mark C. Smith

## Documentation, Support, and Training

The Sun web site provides information about the following additional resources:

- [Documentation](http://www.sun.com/documentation/) (<http://www.sun.com/documentation/>)
- [Support](http://www.sun.com/support/) (<http://www.sun.com/support/>)
- [Training](http://www.sun.com/training/) (<http://www.sun.com/training/>)

## Typographic Conventions

The following table describes the typographic conventions that are used in this book.

TABLE P-1 Typographic Conventions

Typeface	Meaning	Example
<i>AaBbCc123</i>	The names of commands, files, and directories, and onscreen computer output	Edit your <code>.login</code> file. Use <code>ls -a</code> to list all files. <code>machine_name% you have mail.</code>
<b>AaBbCc123</b>	What you type, contrasted with onscreen computer output	<code>machine_name% su</code> Password:
<i>aabbcc123</i>	Placeholder: replace with a real name or value	The command to remove a file is <code>rm filename</code> .
<i>AaBbCc123</i>	Book titles, new terms, and terms to be emphasized	Read Chapter 6 in the <i>User's Guide</i> . A <i>cache</i> is a copy that is stored locally. Do <i>not</i> save the file. <b>Note:</b> Some emphasized items appear bold online.

## Shell Prompts in Command Examples

The following table shows the default UNIX® system prompt and superuser prompt for shells that are included in the Solaris OS. Note that the default system prompt that is displayed in command examples varies, depending on the Solaris release.

TABLE P-2 Shell Prompts

---

Shell	Prompt
Bash shell, Korn shell, and Bourne shell	\$
Bash shell, Korn shell, and Bourne shell for superuser	#
C shell	machine_name%
C shell for superuser	machine_name#

---





**P A R T I**

## About Naming and Directory Services

This part introduces the naming and directory services for the Solaris OS. It also describes the `nsswitch.conf` file that you use to coordinate the use of the different services.



# Naming and Directory Services (Overview)

---

This chapter provides an overview of naming and directory services used in Solaris. This chapter also briefly describes DNS, NIS, and LDAP naming services.

## What Is a Naming Service?

*Naming services* store information in a central place, which enables users, machines, and applications to communicate across the network. This information can include the following.

- Machine (host) names and addresses
- User names
- Passwords
- Access permissions
- Group membership, printers, and so on

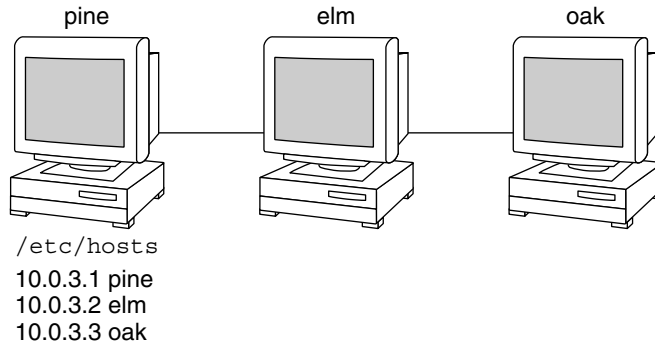
Without a central naming service, each machine would have to maintain its own copy of this information. Naming service information can be stored in files, maps, or database tables. If you centralize all data, administration becomes easier.

Naming services are fundamental to any computing network. Among other features, naming service provide functionality that does the following.

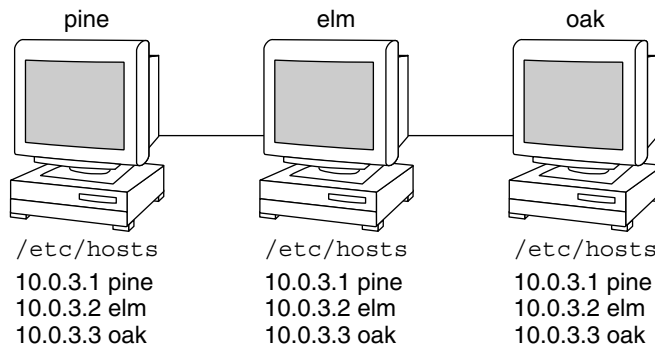
- Associates (*binds*) names with objects
- Resolves names to objects
- Removes bindings
- Lists names
- Renames

A network information service enables machines to be identified by common names instead of numerical addresses. This makes communication simpler because users do not have to remember and try to enter cumbersome numerical addresses like 192 . 168 . 0 . 0.

For example, take a network of three machines that are named, pine, elm, and oak. Before pine can send a message to either elm or oak, pine must know their numerical network addresses. For this reason, pine keeps a file, `/etc/hosts` or `/etc/inet/ipnodes`, that stores the network address of every machine in the network, including itself.



Likewise, in order for elm and oak to communicate with pine or with each other, the machines must keep similar files.

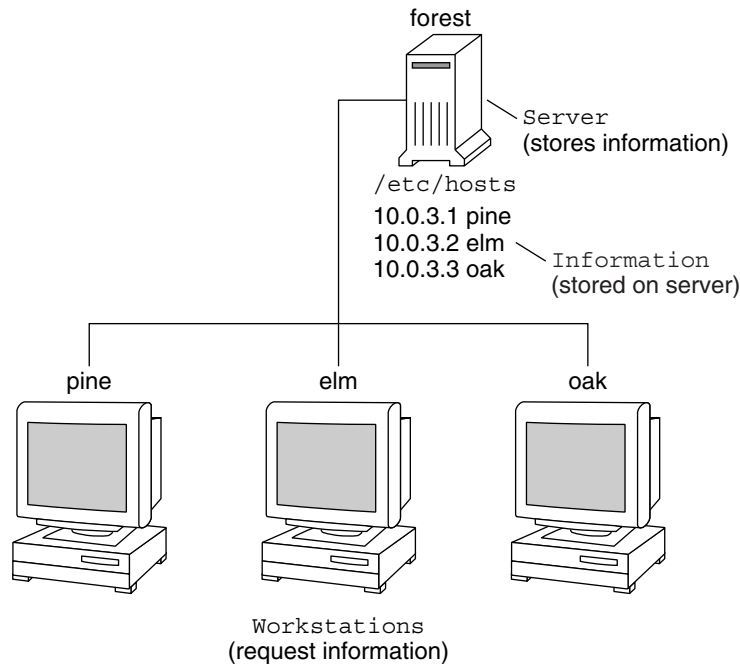


In addition to storing addresses, machines store security information, mail data, network services information and so on. As networks offer more services, the list stored of information grows. As a result, each machine might need to keep an entire set of files which are similar to `/etc/hosts` or `/etc/inet/ipnodes`.

A network information service stores network information on a server, which can be queried by any machine.

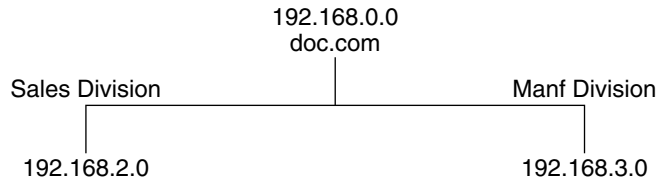


The machines are known as *clients* of the server. The following figure illustrates the client-server arrangement. Whenever information about the network changes, instead of updating each client's local file, an administrator updates only the information stored by the network information service. Doing so reduces errors, inconsistencies between clients, and the sheer size of the task.

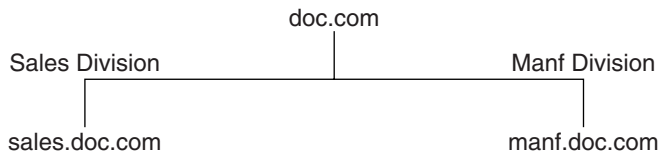


This arrangement, of a server providing centralized services to clients across a network, is known as *client-server computing*.

Although the main purpose of a network information service is to centralize information, the network information service can also simplify network names. For example, assume your company has set up a network which is connected to the Internet. The Internet has assigned your network the network number 192.168.0.0 and the domain name doc.com. Your company has two divisions, Sales and Manufacturing (Manf), so its network is divided into a main net and one subnet for each division. Each net has its own address.



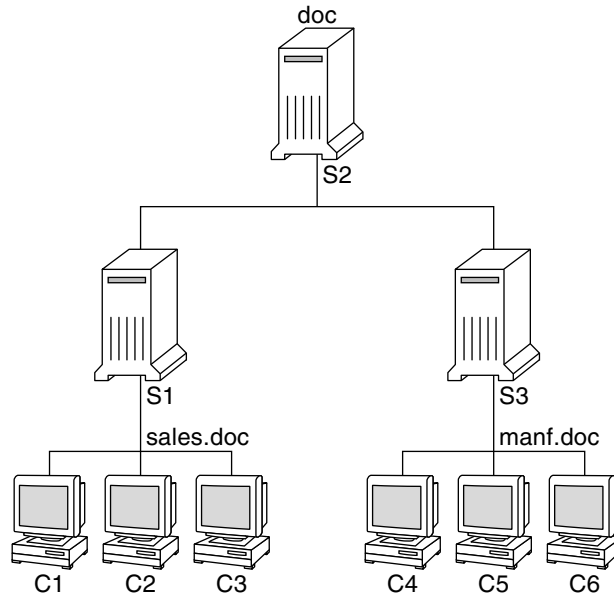
Each division could be identified by its network address, as shown above, but descriptive names made possible by naming services would be preferable.



Instead of addressing mail or other network communications to `198.168.0.0`, mail could be addressed to `doc`. Instead of addressing mail to `192.168.2.0` or `192.168.3.0`, mail could be addressed to `sales.doc` or `manf.doc`.

Names are also more flexible than physical addresses. Physical networks tend to remain stable, but company organization tends to change.

For example, assume that the `doc.com` network is supported by three servers, S1, S2, and S3. Assume that two of those servers, S1 and S3, support clients.

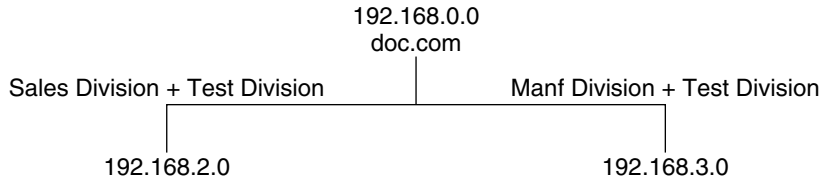


Clients C1, C2, and C3 would obtain their network information from server S1. Clients C4, C5, and C6 would obtain information from server S3. The resulting network is summarized in the following table. The table is a generalized representation of that network but does not resemble an actual network information map.

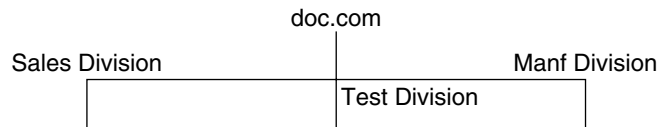
TABLE 1-1 Representation of docs.com network

Network Address	Network Name	Server	Clients
192.168.1.0	doc	S1	
192.168.2.0	sales.doc	S2	C1, C2, C3
192.168.3.0	manf.doc	S3	C4, C5, C6

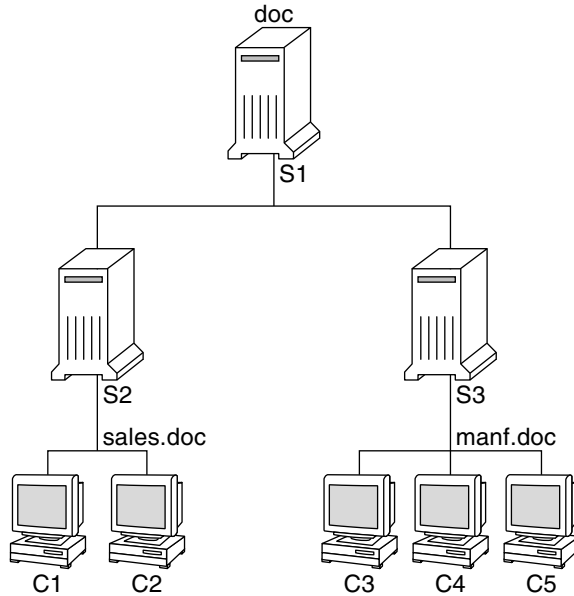
Now, assume that you create a third division, Testing, which borrowed some resources from the other two divisions, but did not create a third subnet. The physical network would then no longer parallel the corporate structure.



Traffic for the Test Division would not have its own subnet, but would instead be split between 192 . 168 . 2 . 0 and 192 . 168 . 3 . 0. However, with a network information service, the Test Division traffic could have its own dedicated network.



Thus, when an organization changes, its network information service can change its mapping as shown here.



Now, clients C1 and C2 would obtain their information from server S2. C3, C4 and C5 would obtain information from server S3.

Subsequent changes in your organization would be accommodated by changes to the network information structure without reorganizing the network structure.

## Solaris Naming Services

The Solaris platform provides the following naming services.

- DNS, the *Domain Name System* (see “[Description of the DNS Naming Service](#)” on page 29)
- `/etc` files, the original UNIX® naming system (see “[Description of the /etc Files Naming Service](#)” on page 30)
- NIS, the *Network Information Service* (see “[Description of the NIS Naming Service](#)” on page 30)
- LDAP, the *Lightweight Directory Access Protocol* (see [Part IV, “LDAP Naming Services Setup and Administration”](#) *LDAP Naming Services Setup and Administration*)

Most modern networks use two or more of these services in combination. When more than one service is used, the services are coordinated by the `nsswitch.conf` file which is discussed in [Chapter 2, “The Name Service Switch \(Overview\)”](#).

## Description of the DNS Naming Service

DNS is the naming service provided by the Internet for TCP/IP networks. DNS was developed so that machines on the network could be identified with common names instead of Internet addresses. DNS performs naming between hosts within your local administrative domain and across domain boundaries.

The collection of networked machines that use DNS are referred to as the *DNS namespace*. The DNS namespace can be divided into a hierarchy of *domains*. A DNS domain is a group of machines. Each domain is supported by two or more *name servers*, a principal server and one or more secondary servers. Each server implements DNS by running the `in.named` daemon. On the client's side, DNS is implemented through the “resolver.” The resolver's function is to resolve users' queries. The resolver queries a name server, which then returns either the requested information or a referral to another server.

## Description of Multicast DNS and Service Discovery

Support for two extensions to the DNS protocol is now available. These two extensions are multicast DNS (mDNS) and DNS Service Discovery (DNS-SD). mDNS extends the Domain Name Service system to operate over link-local multicast. DNS-SD adds support for discovering network services over DNS.

## Description of the `/etc` Files Naming Service

The original host-based UNIX naming system was developed for standalone UNIX machines and then adapted for network use. Many old UNIX operating systems and machines still use this system, but the system is not well suited for large complex networks.

## Description of the NIS Naming Service

The *Network Information Service* (NIS) was developed independently of DNS. DNS makes communication simpler by using machine names instead of numerical IP addresses. NIS focuses on making network administration more manageable by providing centralized control over a variety of network information. NIS stores information about the network, machine names and addresses, users, and network services. This collection of network information is referred to as the *NIS namespace*.

NIS namespace information is stored in NIS maps. NIS maps were designed to replace UNIX `/etc` files, as well as other configuration files. NIS maps store much more than names and addresses. As a result, the NIS namespace has a large set of maps. See [“Working With NIS Maps” on page 101](#) for more information.

NIS uses a client-server arrangement which is similar to DNS. Replicated NIS servers provide services to NIS clients. The principal servers are called *master* servers, and for reliability, the servers have backup, or *slave* servers. Both master and slave servers use the NIS retrieval software and both store NIS maps. For more information on NIS Architecture and NIS Administration, see [Chapter 5, “Setting Up and Configuring NIS Service,”](#) and [Chapter 6, “Administering NIS \(Tasks\).”](#)

## Description of the LDAP Naming Services

The Solaris Operating System supports LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) in conjunction with the Sun Java System Directory Server (formerly Sun ONE Directory Server), as well as other LDAP directory servers.

For information about LDAP naming services, see [Chapter 8, “Introduction to LDAP Naming Services \(Overview/Reference\)”](#).

For information about transitioning from NIS to LDAP, see [Chapter 15, “Transitioning From NIS to LDAP \(Overview/Tasks\).”](#)

For information on single sign-on, as well as the setup and maintenance of Kerberos authentication services, see [Part VI, “Kerberos Service,” in \*System Administration Guide: Security Services\*](#).

# Naming Services: A Quick Comparison

	DNS	NIS	LDAP
NAMESPACE	Hierarchical	Flat	Hierarchical
DATA STORAGE	Files/ resource records	2 column maps	Directories [varied]
SERVER NAMES	Master/slave	Master/slave	Master/replica
SECURITY	None	None (root or nothing)	SSL, varied
TRANSPORT	TCP/IP	RPC	TCP/IP
SCALE	Global	LAN	Global





# The Name Service Switch (Overview)

---

This chapter describes the name service switch. You use the name service switch to coordinate usage of different naming services.

## About the Name Service Switch

The name service switch is a file which is named, `nsswitch.conf`. The name service switch controls how a client machine or application obtains network information. The name service switch is used by client applications that call any of the `getXbyY()` interfaces such as the following.

- `gethostbyname()`
- `getpwuid()`
- `getpwnam()`
- `getaddrinfo()`

Each machine has a switch file in its `/etc` directory. Each line of that file identifies a particular type of network information, such as host, password, and group, followed by one or more locations of that information.

A client can obtain naming information from one or more of the switch's sources. For example, an NIS client could obtain its hosts information from an NIS map and its password information from a local `/etc` file. In addition, the client could specify the conditions under which the switch must use each source. See [Table 2-1](#).

The Solaris system automatically loads an `nsswitch.conf` file into every machine's `/etc` directory as part of the installation process. Four alternate (template) versions of the switch file are also loaded into `/etc` for LDAP, NIS, or files. See [“The `nsswitch.conf` Template Files” on page 38](#).

These four files are alternate default switch files. Each file is designed for a different primary naming service: `/etc` files, NIS, or LDAP. When the Solaris software is first installed on a machine, the installer selects the machine's default naming service: NIS, local files, or LDAP.

During installation, the corresponding template file is copied to `nsswitch.conf`. For example, for a machine client using LDAP, the installation process copies `nsswitch.ldap` to `nsswitch.conf`. Unless you have an unusual namespace, the default template file as copied to `nsswitch.conf` should be sufficient for normal operation.

No default file is provided for DNS, but you can edit any of these files to use DNS. For more information see [“DNS and Internet Access” on page 43](#).

If you later change a machine's primary naming service, you copy the appropriate alternate switch file to `nsswitch.conf`. See [“The `nsswitch.conf` Template Files” on page 38](#). You can also change the sources of particular types of network information used by the client by editing the appropriate lines of the `/etc/nsswitch.conf` file. The syntax is described below, and additional instructions are provided in [“How to Modify the Name Service Switch” on page 42](#).

## Format of the `nsswitch.conf` File

The `nsswitch.conf` file is essentially a list of 16 types of information and the sources that `getXXbyYY()` routines search for that information. The 16 types of information, not necessarily in this order, are the following.

- `aliases`
- `bootparams`
- `ethers`
- `group`
- `hosts`
- `ipnodes`
- `netgroup`
- `netmasks`
- `networks`
- `passwd`, which includes shadow information
- `protocols`
- `publickey`
- `rpc`
- `services`
- `automount`
- `sendmailvars`

The following table provides a description of the kind of sources that can be listed in the switch file for the information types above.

TABLE 2-1 Switch File Information Sources

Information Sources	Description
files	A file stored in the client's /etc directory. For example, /etc/passwd
nis	An NIS map. For example, the hosts map.
compat	compat can be used for password and group information to support old-style + or - syntax in /etc/passwd, /etc/shadow, and /etc/group files.
dns	Can be used to specify that host information be obtained from DNS.
ldap	Can be used to specify entries be obtained from the LDAP directory.

## Search Criteria

*Single Source.* If an information type has only one source, such as nisplus a routine using the switch searches for the information in that source *only*. If the routine finds the information, the routine returns a success status message. If the routine does not find the information, the routine stops searching and returns a different status message. What the routine does with the status message varies from routine to routine.

*Multiple Sources.* If a table contains multiple sources for a given information type, the switch directs the routine to search in the first listed source. If the routine finds the information, the routine returns a success status message. If the routine does not find the information in the first source, the routine tries the next source. The routine searches all sources until the routine has found the information, or until the routine is halted by a return specification. If all of the listed sources are searched without finding the information, the routine stops searching and returns a non-success status message.

## Switch Status Messages

If a routine finds the information, the routine returns a success status message. If the routine does not find the information, the routine returns one of three error status messages. Possible status messages are listed in the following table.

TABLE 2-2 Switch Search Status Messages

Status Message	Meaning of Message
SUCCESS	The requested entry was found in the specified source.
UNAVAIL	The source is either unresponsive or unavailable. In other words, neither the NIS map, nor the /etc file could be found or be accessed.
NOTFOUND	The source responded with "No such entry." In other words, the table, map, or file was accessed but the needed information was not found.

TABLE 2-2 Switch Search Status Messages (Continued)

Status Message	Meaning of Message
TRYAGAIN	The source is busy. The source might respond next time. In other words, the table, map, or file was found, but could not respond to the query.

## Switch Action Options

You can instruct the switch to respond to status messages with either of the two *actions* shown in the following table.

TABLE 2-3 Responses to Switch Status Messages

Action	Meaning
return	Stop looking for the information.
continue	Try the next source.

## Default Search Criteria

The combination of `nsswitch.conf` file status message and action option determines what the routine does at each step. The combination of status and action make up the search *criteria*.

The switch's default search criteria are the same for every source. As described in terms of the status messages listed above, see the following.

- `SUCCESS=return`. Stop looking for the information. Proceed using the information that has been found.
- `UNAVAIL=continue`. Go to the next `nsswitch.conf` file source and continue searching. If this source is the last or only source, return with a `NOTFOUND` status.
- `NOTFOUND=continue`. Go to the next `nsswitch.conf` file source and continue searching. If this source is the last or only source, return with a `NOTFOUND` status.
- `TRYAGAIN=continue`. Go to the next `nsswitch.conf` file source and continue searching. If this source is the last or only source, return with a `NOTFOUND` status.

You can change default search criteria by explicitly specifying some other criteria by using the `STATUS=action` syntax shown above. For example, the default action for a `NOTFOUND` condition is to continue the search to the next source. For example, to specify for `networks`, the search should stop in a `NOTFOUND` condition, edit the `networks` line of the switch file. The line would read as follows.

```
networks: nis [NOTFOUND=return] files
```

The `networks: nis [NOTFOUND=return] files` line specifies a nondefault criterion for the `NOTFOUND` status. Nondefault criteria are delimited by square brackets.

In this example, the search routine behaves as follows:

- If the networks map is available, and contains the needed information, the routine returns with a `SUCCESS` status message.
- If the networks map is not available, the routine returns with an `UNAVAIL` status message. By default, the routine continues to search the appropriate `/etc` file.
- If the networks map is available and found, but the map does not contain the needed information, the routine returns with a `NOTFOUND` message. But, instead of continuing on to search the appropriate `/etc` file, which would be the default behavior, the routine stops searching.
- If the networks map is busy, the routine returns with an `TRYAGAIN` status message and by default continues on to search the appropriate `/etc` file.

---

**Note** – Lookups in the `nsswitch.conf` file are done in the order in which items are listed. However, password updates are done in reverse order, unless otherwise specified by using the `passwd -r repository` command. See “[The Switch File and Password Information](#)” on page 44 for more information.

---

## What if the Syntax is Wrong?

Client library routines contain compiled-in default entries that are used if an entry in the `nsswitch.conf` file is either missing or syntactically incorrect. These entries are the same as the switch file’s defaults.

The name service switch assumes that the table and source names are spelled correctly. If you misspell a table or source name, the switch uses default values.

## Auto\_home and Auto\_master

The switch search criteria for the `auto_home` and `auto_master` tables and maps is combined into one category, which is called `automount`.

## Timezone and the Switch File

The `timezone` table does not use the switch, so the table is not included in the switch file’s list.

## Comments in nsswitch.conf Files

Any `nsswitch.conf` file line beginning with a comment character (`#`) is interpreted as a comment line. A comment line is ignored by routines that search the file.

Characters preceding a comment mark *are* interpreted by routines that search the `nsswitch.conf` file. Characters to the right of the comment mark are interpreted as comments and ignored.

TABLE 2-4 Switch File Comment Examples

Type of Line	Example
Comment line.	# hosts: nisplus [NOTFOUND=return] files
Interpreted line.	hosts: nisplus [NOTFOUND=return] file
Partially interpreted line. The files element is not interpreted.	hosts: nisplus [NOTFOUND=return] # files

## Keyserver and publickey Entry in the Switch File



**Caution** – You must restart the keyserver after you make a change to `nsswitch.conf`.

The keyserver reads the `publickey` entry in the name service switch configuration file only when the keyserver is started. If you change the switch configuration file, the keyserver does not register the changes until the keyserver is restarted.

## The nsswitch.conf Template Files

Four switch template files are provided with the Solaris system to accommodate different naming services. Each file provides a different default set of information sources.

The four template files are the following.

- *LDAP template file.* The `nsswitch.ldap` configuration file specifies the LDAP directory as the primary source of information for the machine.

---

**Note** – In order to use LDAP naming services, you must also properly configure all LDAP client machines, in addition to modifying the `nsswitch.conf`. See [Chapter 12, “Setting Up LDAP Clients \(Tasks\)”](#), for more information.

---

- *NIS template file.* The `nsswitch.nis` configuration file specifies NIS as the primary source for all information except `passwd`, `group`, `automount`, and `aliases`. For those four files, the primary source is local `/etc` files. The secondary source is an NIS map. The `[NOTFOUND=return]` search criterion instructs the switch to stop searching the NIS maps if the switch gets a “No such entry” message. The switch searches through local files only if the NIS server is unavailable.

Because the search order for `passwd` and `group` is `files nis`, you don't need to place the `+` entry in the `/etc/passwd` and `/etc/group` files.

- *Files template file.* The `nsswitch.files` configuration file specifies local `/etc` files as the only source of information for the machine. There is no “files” source for `netgroup`, so the client does not use that entry in the switch file.

Copy the template file that most closely meets your requirements to the `nsswitch.conf` configuration file and then modify the file as needed.

For example, to use the LDAP template file, you would type the following command.

```
mymachine# cp /etc/nsswitch.ldap /etc/nsswitch.conf
```

## The Default Switch Template Files

The following switch files are supplied with the Solaris product.

### EXAMPLE 2-1 NIS Switch File Template

```
#
# /etc/nsswitch.nis:
#
# An example file that could be copied over to /etc/nsswitch.conf;
# it uses NIS (YP) in conjunction with files.
#
# "hosts:" and "services:" in this file are used only if the
# /etc/netconfig file has a "-" for nametoaddr_libs of "inet"
# transports.
#
# the following two lines obviate the "+" entry in /etc/passwd
# and /etc/group.
passwd: files nis
group: files nis
# consult /etc "files" only if nis is down.
hosts: nis [NOTFOUND=return] files
networks: nis [NOTFOUND=return] files
protocols: nis [NOTFOUND=return] files
rpc: nis [NOTFOUND=return] files
ethers: nis [NOTFOUND=return] files
netmasks: nis [NOTFOUND=return] files
bootparams: nis [NOTFOUND=return] files
publickey: nis [NOTFOUND=return] files
netgroup: nis
automount: files nis
aliases: files nis
# for efficient getservbyname() avoid nis
services: files nis
sendmailvars: files
```

**EXAMPLE 2-2** Files Switch File Template

```
#
# /etc/nsswitch.files:
#
# An example file that could be copied over to /etc/nsswitch.conf;
# it does not use any naming service.
#
# "hosts:" and "services:" in this file are used only if the
# /etc/netconfig file has a "-" for nametoaddr_libs of "inet"
# transports.
passwd: files
group: files
hosts: files
networks: files
protocols: files
rpc: files
ethers: files
netmasks: files
bootparams: files
publickey: files
# At present there isn't a 'files' back end for netgroup;
# the system will figure it out pretty quickly, and will not use
# netgroups at all.
netgroup: files
automount: files
aliases: files
services: files
sendmailvars: files
```

**EXAMPLE 2-3** LDAP Switch File Template

```
#
# /etc/nsswitch.ldap:
#
# An example file that could be copied over to /etc/nsswitch.conf; it
# uses LDAP in conjunction with files.
#
# "hosts:" and "services:" in this file are used only if the
# /etc/netconfig file has a "-" for nametoaddr_libs of "inet" transports.

# the following two lines obviate the "+" entry in /etc/passwd
# and /etc/group.
passwd:    files ldap
group:     files ldap

hosts:     ldap [NOTFOUND=return] files
```



**EXAMPLE 2-3** LDAP Switch File Template (Continued)

```
networks:  ldap [NOTFOUND=return] files
protocols: ldap [NOTFOUND=return] files
rpc:      ldap [NOTFOUND=return] files
ethers:   ldap [NOTFOUND=return] files
netmasks: ldap [NOTFOUND=return] files
bootparams: ldap [NOTFOUND=return] files
publickey: ldap [NOTFOUND=return] files

netgroup:  ldap

automount: files ldap
aliases:   files ldap

# for efficient getservbyname() avoid ldap
services:  files ldap
sendmailvars:  files
```

## The nsswitch.conf File

The default nsswitch.conf file that is installed with the Solaris software is determined by which naming service you select during the installation process. Each line identifies a particular type of network information, such as host, password, and group, along with the information source, such as NIS maps, the DNS hosts table, or local /etc. When you chose a naming service, the switch template file for that service is copied to create the new nsswitch.conf file. For example, if you choose NIS, the nsswitch.nis file is copied to create a new nsswitch.conf file.

An nsswitch.conf file is automatically loaded into every machine's /etc directory by the Solaris 9 release software, along with the following alternate (template) versions.

- /etc/nsswitch.nisplus
- /etc/nsswitch.nis
- /etc/nsswitch.files
- /etc/nsswitch.ldap

These alternate template files contain the default switch configurations used by the NIS services, local files, and LDAP. No default file is provided for DNS, but you can edit any of these files to use DNS. When the Solaris software is first installed on a machine, the installer selects the machine's default naming service. During installation, the corresponding template file is copied to /etc/nsswitch.conf. For example, for a machine client using NIS, the installation process copies nsswitch.nis to nsswitch.conf.

If your network is connected to the Internet and users must access Internet hosts using DNS, you must enable DNS forwarding.

Unless you have an unusual namespace, the default template file as copied to `nsswitch.conf` should be sufficient for normal operation.

## Selecting a Different Configuration File

When you change a machine's naming service, you need to modify that machine's switch file accordingly. For example, if you change a machine's naming service from files to NIS, you need to install a switch file appropriate for NIS. You change switch files by copying the appropriate template file to `nsswitch.conf`.

Before proceeding to change switch files, make sure the sources listed in the file are properly set up. In other words, if you are going to select the NIS version, the client must eventually have access to NIS service. If you select the local files version, those files must be properly set up on the client.

### ▼ How to Modify the Name Service Switch

To change to a switch file, follow these steps.

---

**Note** – In order to use LDAP naming services, you must also properly configure all LDAP client machines, in addition to modifying the `nsswitch.conf`. See [Chapter 12, “Setting Up LDAP Clients \(Tasks\)”](#), for more information.

---

#### 1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role.

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control \(Tasks\)”](#), in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

#### 2 Copy the appropriate alternate file for the machine's naming service over the `nsswitch.conf` file.

*NIS Version*

```
client1# cd /etc
client1# cp nsswitch.nis nsswitch.conf
```

*Local /etc Files Version*

```
client1# cd /etc
client1# cp nsswitch.files nsswitch.conf
```

#### 3 Reboot the machine.

The `nscd` daemon caches switch information. See the [`nscd\(1M\)`](#) man page for information.

Some library routines do not periodically check the `nsswitch.conf` file to see whether the file has been changed. You must reboot the machine to make sure that the daemon and those routines have the latest information in the file.

## DNS and Internet Access

The `nsswitch.conf` file also controls DNS forwarding for clients as described in the following subsections. DNS forwarding grants Internet access to clients.

## IPv6 and Solaris Naming Services

NIS and LDAP support storing IPv6 data, as well as using IPv6 transports for protocol traffic. Beginning with BIND version 8.3.3, DNS on the Solaris OS supports the use of IPv6 transports on the client side. As of BIND version 8.4.2, DNS provides a complete client-server solution over IPv6 networks on Solaris.

The `nsswitch.conf` file controls search criteria for IPv6 addresses. IPv6 increases the IP address size from 32 bits to 128 bits to support more levels of addressing hierarchy. A larger address size provides a greater number of addressable nodes. For more information about IPv6, its configuration and implementation, see *System Administration Guide: IP Services*.

Use the new `ipnodes` source for IPv6 addresses. The `/etc/inet/ipnodes` file stores both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses. The `/etc/inet/ipnodes` file uses the same format convention as the `/etc/hosts` file.

IPv6 aware naming services use the new `ipnodes` source for its search forwarding. For instance, if LDAP is aware of IPv6 addresses, specify the following.

```
ipnodes: ldap [NOTFOUND=return] files
```




---

**Caution** – Potential delay issues:

- `ipnodes` defaults to `files`. During the transition from IPv4 to IPv6, where all naming services are not aware of IPv6 addresses, accept the `files` default. Otherwise, unnecessary delays, such as boot timing delays, might result during the resolution of addresses.
  - An application searches all `ipnodes` databases for IPv4 addresses before searching for IPv4 addresses in the `hosts` databases. Before specifying `ipnodes`, consider the inherent delay of searching both databases for IPv4 addresses.
-

## Ensuring Compatibility With +/- Syntax

If +/- is used in `/etc/passwd`, `/etc/shadow`, and `/etc/group` files, you need to modify the `nsswitch.conf` file to insure compatibility.

*NIS.* To provide the same syntax as in the Solaris 4.x release, change the `passwd` and `groups` sources to `compat`.

```
passwd: compat
group: compat
```

Specifies the `/etc` files and NIS maps as indicated by the +/- entries in the files.

## The Switch File and Password Information

It is possible to include and access password information in multiple repositories, such as `files` and `nisplus`. You can use the `nsswitch.conf` file to establish the lookup order for that information.



---

**Caution** – `files` must be the first source in the `nsswitch.conf` file for `passwd` information.

---

In an NIS environment, the `passwd` line of the `nsswitch.conf` file should list the repositories in the following order.

```
passwd: files nis
```

---

**Tip** – Listing `files` first allows `root` to log in, under most circumstances, even when the system encounters some network or naming services issues.

---

Maintaining multiple repositories *for the same user* is not recommended. By maintaining centralized password management in a single repository for each user, you reduce the possibilities of confusion and error. If you choose to maintain multiple repositories per user, update password information by using the `passwd -r` command.

```
passwd -r repository
```

If no repository is specified with the `-r` option, `passwd` updates the repositories listed in `nsswitch.conf` in reverse order.



**P A R T I I**

## **DNS Setup and Administration**

This part describes the configuration and administration of the BIND 9 DNS naming service in the Solaris OS.



## DNS Setup and Administration (Reference)

---

The Solaris Operating System (Solaris OS) ships with the BIND 9.x DNS name server. This chapter provides configuration and administration information related to using BIND 9 on the Solaris operating system. General BIND and DNS information is available from many other sources, including those listed in “Related Materials” on page 47.

This chapter covers the following topics.

- “Related Materials” on page 47
- “Migrating From BIND 8 to BIND 9” on page 48
- “DNS and the Service Management Facility” on page 49
- “Implementing rndc” on page 50
- “BIND 9 Commands, Files, Tools, and Options” on page 52
- “The named.conf Options” on page 54
- “Multicast DNS and Service Discovery” on page 65

### Related Materials

For information about DNS and BIND administration, see the following documentation.

- BIND 9 Migration Notes documentation in `/usr/share/doc/bind/migration.txt`
- BIND 9 Administrator's Manual on the Internet Systems Consortium (ISC) web site at <http://www.isc.org>
- Listings of BIND features, known bugs and defects, and links to additional material on the ISC web site at <http://www.isc.org>
- *DNS and Bind*, by Paul Albitz and Cricket Liu, (4th Edition, O'Reilly, 2001)

## Migrating From BIND 8 to BIND 9

BIND 9 is upwards compatible with most BIND 8 features. However, there are still a number of caveats you should be aware of when upgrading an existing BIND 8 installation to use BIND 9. Be sure to read the entire Migration Notes document before installing and using BIND 9. The Migration Notes are available at `/usr/share/doc/bind/migration.txt`. Also, the BIND package names have changed to `SUNWbind` and `SUNWbindr`. The `SUNWbindr` package contains the DNS server manifest.

The following list presents a brief overview of the differences between BIND 8 and BIND 9. Details are available in the Migration Notes.

- Configuration File Compatibility
  - Unimplemented options warning message
  - *transfer-format* option changes
  - Configuration file errors
  - Logging categories have changed
  - Notify message and refresh query changes
  - Multiple classes change
- Zone File Compatibility
  - Stricter rules for TTLs in zone file
  - SOA serial number changes
  - Unbalanced quotes cause errors
  - Line breaks, syntax change
  - Use `\$` instead of `$$` in domain names
- Interoperability Impact of New Protocol Features
  - EDNS0 new in BIND 9
  - Zone transfers default change
- Unrestricted Character Set
  - No restrictions on character set
  - Security issue, improper naming
- Server Administration Tools
  - The `rndc` program replaces `ndc`
  - `nsupdate`: changes in multiple updates
- No Information Leakage Between Zones
  - Glue NS records handled differently
- Umask Not Modified
  - Possible umask permissions issues



## DNS and the Service Management Facility

The DNS/BIND named service can be managed by using the Service Management Facility (SMF). For an overview of SMF, refer to [Chapter 17, “Managing Services \(Overview\),”](#) in *System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*. Also refer to the `svcadm(1M)`, `svcs(1)`, and `svccfg(1M)` man pages for more details. Also review the DNS server manifest, `server.xml`, in `/var/svc/manifest/network/dns`.

- Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or restarting, can be performed by using the `svcadm` command.

---

**Tip** – Temporarily disabling a service by using the `-t` option provides some protection for the service configuration. If the service is disabled with the `-t` option, the original settings would be restored for the service after a reboot. If the service is disabled without `-t`, the service will remain disabled after reboot.

---

- The Fault Managed Resource Identifiers (FMRIs) for the DNS service are `svc:/network/dns/server:<instance>` and `svc:/network/dns/client:<instance>`.
- You can query the status of the DNS server and client by using the `svcs` command.
  - Example of the `svcs` command and output.

```
# svcs \*dns\*
STATE          STIME    FMRI
online         Nov_16   svc:/network/dns/server:default
online         Nov_16   svc:/network/dns/client:default
```

- Example of `svcs -l` command and output.

```
# svcs -l /network/dns/server
fmri          svc:/network/dns/server:default
name          Internet domain name server (DNS)
enabled       true
state         online
next_state    none
restarter     svc:/system/svc/restarter:default
contract_id   25
dependency   require_all/none svc:/system/filesystem/minimal (online)
dependency   require_all/none file:///localhost/etc/named.conf (online)
dependency   require_any/error svc:/network/loopback (online)
dependency   optional_all/error svc:/network/physical (online)
```

- If you need to start the DNS service with different options (for example with a configuration file other than `/etc/named.conf`), change the *start method* property of the DNS server manifest by using the `svccfg` command.

- Multiple SMF service instances are only needed if you want to run multiple copies of BIND 9 name service. Each additional instance can be specified in the DNS server manifest with a different start method.

While it is recommended that you use `svcadm` to administer the server, you can use `rndc` as well. SMF is aware of the state change of the BIND 9 named service, whether administered by using `svcadm` or `rndc`.

---

**Note** – SMF will not be aware of the BIND 9 named service if the service is manually executed from the command line.

---

## Implementing rndc

The BIND 8 `ndc` and BIND 9 `rndc` name server control tools are *not* backward compatible. `rndc` can *not* talk to the BIND 8 name server and `ndc` can *not* talk to the BIND 9 name server. Features, options, default modes of operation, and configuration file requirements have changed. Therefore, using `ndc` on a BIND 9 server could result in loss of functionality or insecure operation. See the `rndc(1M)` man page for more information.

## The `rndc.conf` Configuration File

The most significant difference between `ndc` in BIND 8 and `rndc` in BIND 9 is that `rndc` needs its own configuration file, `rndc.conf`. This file can be generated by `rndc-confgen` commands. The `rndc.conf` file specifies which server controls and what algorithm the server should use.

**EXAMPLE 3-1** Sample `rndc.conf` File

```
options {
    default-server localhost;
    default-key "rndc-key";
};

key "rndc-key" {
    algorithm hmac-md5;
    secret "qPWZ3Ndl81aBRY9AmJhVtU==";
};
```

**EXAMPLE 3-2** Sample `named.conf` File Entry for `rndc`

```
controls {
    inet * allow { any; } keys { "rndc-key"; };
};
```

EXAMPLE 3-2 Sample named.conf File Entry for rndc (Continued)

```
key "rndc-key" {
    algorithm hmac-md5;
    secret "qPWZ3Nd181aBRY9AmJhVtU==";
};
```

## Differences in the Control Channels

Both the ndc and the rndc utilities use a control channel to send commands to and retrieve information from a name server. However, there are differences between the utilities.

- In BIND 8, ndc can use AF\_UNIX domain sockets (UNIX control channel) or TCP/IP sockets (inet control channel). By default, ndc does not need any support in /etc/named.conf, because BIND 8 servers use a UNIX domain socket with a path (/var/run/ndc.d/ndc) compiled into in.named.  
For BIND 9, however, rndc only uses an authenticated TCP/IP inet control channel and so is not backward compatible with BIND 8. There is no UNIX domain socket support for control channels in BIND 9 servers.
- When using rndc, you need to specify a 'key' clause to communicate with the name server. It is mandatory that the BIND 9 server and the rndc client share the same key (defined both in /etc/named.conf and /etc/rndc.conf). Using the BIND 8 controls entry in BIND 9 will result in an error message.
- Some command options have changed from the ndc to the rndc implementation. This includes the -c option, which has a different syntax in BIND 9. Therefore, to specify the control channel in BIND 9, use rndc -s <server> -p <port>.

## Commands of BIND 9 rndc

The following list describes the rndc commands.

reload	Reload configuration file and zones
reload zone [class [view]]	Reload a single zone
refresh zone [class [view]]	Schedule immediate maintenance for a zone
reconfig	Reload configuration file and new zones only
stats	Write server statistics to the statistics file
querylog	Toggle query logging
dumpdb	Dump cache(s) to the dump file (named_dump.db)
stop	Save pending updates to master files and stop the server

halt	Stop the server without saving pending updates
trace	Increment debugging level by one
trace level	Change the debugging level
notrace	Set debugging level to 0
flush	Flushes all of the server's caches
flush [view]	Flushes the server's cache for a view
status	Display status of the server
restart	Restart the server (not yet implemented)

## BIND 9 Commands, Files, Tools, and Options

Some commands, files, tools, and options have remained the same in BIND 9 as they were in BIND 8. However, some have been modified and others have been added. This section describes many of the commands, files, tools, and options in BIND 9 and the new or modified behavior associated with each item.

### BIND 9 Tools and Configuration Files

The following BIND 9.x tools are available with the Solaris operating system.

named  
nsupdate  
rndc  
dnssec-keygen  
nslookup  
dig  
dnssec-makekeyset  
dnssec-signkey  
dnssec-signzone  
named-checkconf  
named-checkzone  
rndc-confgen  
host

The following BIND 9.x configuration file is supported in Solaris 10 and Solaris Express Developer Edition releases.

/etc/rndc.conf

## Comparison of BIND 8 and BIND 9 Commands and Files

The table below compares BIND 8 and BIND 9 commands and configuration files.

BIND 8 Command	BIND 9.x Replacement
dnskeygen(1M)	dnssec-keygen(1M)
ndc(1M)	rndc(1M)
named-bootconf(1M)	NONE NEEDED
nsupdate(1M)	nsupdate(1M)
nslookup(1M)	nslookup(1M)
named-xfer(1M)	NONE NEEDED
in.named(1M)	named(1M)
named.conf(4)	named.conf <sup>1</sup>
dig(1M)	dig(1M)

<sup>1</sup> A detailed named.conf man page is not included with BIND 9.2.4. “[The named.conf Options](#)” on page 54 includes a summary of the named.conf options that are supported in BIND 9.2.4.

## Descriptions of Command and Option Changes

All incompatibles listed below are BIND 8 features and interfaces that are *not* supported in the equivalent BIND 9 binary. This is not intended to be an exhaustive list of the options, command line options, or features for any BIND 9.x binary.

Command	Option Changes
in.named(1M)	Some DNS name server in.named command line options are not supported.  In the BIND 9.x name server, the <code>-g group_name</code> , <code>-q</code> , <code>-r</code> and <code>-w directory</code> options are not supported, and <code>-c config_file</code> replaces the BIND 8.x <code>-b config_file</code> . See the named man page for further details.
dnssec-keygen(1M)	dnskeygen in BIND 8.x, used to generate keys, and dnssec-keygen from BIND 9.x, have no common options. See the dnssec-keygen man page for further details.

Command	Option Changes
<code>rndc(1M)</code>	<code>ndc</code> in BIND 8.x and <code>rndc</code> in BIND 9.x are significantly different. They share no common options and unlike <code>ndc</code> , <code>rndc</code> needs a configuration file in <code>/etc/rndc.conf</code> in order to run. See man pages for <code>rndc</code> , <code>rndc.conf</code> , and <code>rndc-confgen</code> for further details.
<code>nsupdate(1M)</code>	In BIND 9.x, the syntax of the <code>-k</code> option changes in <code>nsupdate</code> . Instead of <code>-k keydir::keyname</code> , the syntax is now <code>k keyfile</code> . The only other difference is that whereas a blank line was used to signal sending the input to the server, an explicit <code>send</code> subcommand is now used to do the same. See the <code>nsupdate</code> man page for further details.
<code>nslookup(1M)</code>	The following options are unsupported in the 9.x version of BIND: <code>help</code> , <code>host server</code> , <code>set ignoretc</code> , <code>set noignoretc</code> , <code>set srch[list]=N1[/N2/.../N6]</code> , <code>set ro[ot]=host, root, finger [USER], ls [opt] DOMAIN [&gt; FILE]</code>
<code>named.conf(4)</code>	A detailed <code>named.conf</code> man page is not included with BIND 9.2.4. Several options are unsupported, not implemented, or have changed defaults. For a list of the option changes and a summary of all <code>named.conf</code> options that are supported in BIND 9.2.4, see “ <a href="#">The named.conf Options</a> ” on page 54.

## The named.conf Options

The following list compares the `named.conf` options between BIND 8 and BIND 9. It also provides a brief description of the changes. An *OK* in the Changes column denotes the option works unchanged for the BIND 9 version of `named`.

Options {	Changes
[ <code>version version_string</code> ; ]	OK
[ <code>directory path_name</code> ; ]	OK
[ <code>named-xfer path_name</code> ; ]	Obsolete <sup>1</sup>
[ <code>dump-file path_name</code> ; ]	OK
[ <code>memstatistics-file path_name</code> ; ]	Not Implemented
[ <code>pid-file path_name</code> ; ]	OK
[ <code>statistics-file path_name</code> ; ]	OK
[ <code>auth-nxdomain yes_or_no</code> ; ]	OK <sup>2</sup>
[ <code>dialup yes_or_no</code> ; ]	OK

<sup>1</sup> Obsolete due to architectural differences.

<sup>2</sup> Default set to *yes* in BIND 8, *no* in BIND 9.

Options {	Changes
[ fake-iquery yes_or_no; ]	Obsolete
[ fetch-glue yes_or_no; ]	Obsolete
[ has-old-clients yes_or_no; ]	Obsolete
[ host-statistics yes_or_no; ]	Not Implemented
[ host-statistics-max number; ]	Not Implemented
[ multiple-cnames yes_or_no; ]	Obsolete
[ notify yes_or_no   explicit; ]	OK
[ recursion yes_or_no; ]	OK
[ rfc2308-type1 yes_or_no; ]	Not Implemented
[ use-id-pool yes_or_no; ]	Obsolete
[ treat-cr-as-space yes_or_no; ]	Obsolete
[ also-notify yes_or_no; ]	Syntax Changed <sup>3</sup>
[ forward ( only   first ); ]	OK <sup>4</sup>
[ forwarders { [ in_addr; \ [ in_addr; ... ] ] }; ]	OK <sup>5</sup>
[ check-names ( master   slave   \ response ) ( warn   fail   ignore ); ]	Not Implemented
[ allow-query { address_match_list }; ]	OK
[ allow-recursion { address_match_list }; ]	OK
[ allow-transfer { address_match_list }; ]	OK
[ blackhole { address_match_list }; ]	OK
[ listen-on [ port ip_port ] \ { address_match_list }; ]	OK
[ query-source [ address ( ip_addr   * ) ] \ [ port ( ip_port   * ) ]; ]	OK
[ lame-ttl number; ]	OK
[ max-transfer-time-in number; ]	OK

<sup>3</sup> Needs an IP address for *yes*.

<sup>4</sup> Doesn't work if no forwarder specified; Gives an error of no matching 'forwarders' statement in that case.

<sup>5</sup> See [ forward ] clause.

Options {	Changes
[ max-ncache-ttl number; ]	OK
[ min-roots number; ]	Not Implemented
[ transfer-format ( one-answer   \many-answers ); ]	OK <sup>6</sup>
[ transfers-in number; ]	OK
[ transfers-out number; ]	OK
[ transfers-per-ns number; ]	OK
[ transfer-source ip_addr; ]	OK
[ maintain-ixfr-base yes_or_no; ]	Obsolete
[ max-ixfr-log-size number; ]	Obsolete <sup>7</sup>
[ coresize size_spec; ]	OK
[ datasize size_spec; ]	OK
[ files size_spec; ]	OK
[ stacksize size_spec; ]	OK
[ cleaning-interval number; ]	OK
[ heartbeat-interval number; ]	OK
[ interface-interval number; ]	OK
[ statistics-interval number; ]	Not Implemented
[ topology { address_match_list }; ]	Not Implemented
[ sortlist { address_match_list }; ]	OK
[ rrset-order { order_spec; \order_spec; ... } ]; ]	Not Implemented
};	

<sup>6</sup> Default set to *one-answer* in BIND 8 and *many-answers* in BIND 9.

<sup>7</sup> No need for this option as BIND 9 trims the size of its log file automatically.

## Statements in BIND 9

This section describes any differences between BIND 8 and BIND 9 statements.



## The Controls Statement

*unix* is the default for *ndc* and all of the arguments are compiled in. *inet* is the only option for *rndc* and nothing is compiled in.

```
Syntax
controls {
  [ inet ip_addr
    port ip_port
    allow { address_match_list; }; ]    OK
  [ unix path_name
    perm number
    owner number
    group number; ]                  Not Implemented
};
```

Logging syntax has changed significantly. See [“The named.conf Options” on page 54](#) for a list of named.conf options.

## The Zone Statement

The syntax for the zone statement in the BIND 8 named.conf man page is mostly supported for BIND 9 except for the following:

```
[ pubkey number number number string; ]    Obsolete
[ check-names ( warn | fail | ignore ); ]    Not Implemented
```

## The ACL Statement

Works unchanged in BIND 9.

```
Syntax
acl name {
  address_match_list
};
```

## The Key Statement

Works unchanged in BIND 9.

```
Syntax
key key_id {
  algorithm algorithm_id;
  secret secret_string;
};
```

## The Trusted-Keys Statement

Works unchanged, however the code to use this statement has been turned off in BIND 9.2.4.

Syntax

```
trusted-keys {  
    [ domain_name flags protocol algorithm key; ]  
};
```

## The Server Statement

*support-ixfr* is obsolete, however all of the following options work unchanged in BIND 9. Note the default for *transfer-format* has changed.

Syntax

```
server ip_addr {  
    [ bogus yes_or_no; ]  
    [ transfers number; ]  
    [ transfer-format ( one-answer | many-answers ); ]  
    [ keys { key_id [ key_id ... ] }; ]  
    [ edns yes_or_no; ]  
};
```

## The Include Statement

Works unchanged in BIND 9.

Syntax

```
include path_name;
```

## Summary of the named.conf Options

A detailed named.conf man page is not included with BIND 9.2.4. Following is a summary of the named.conf options that are supported in BIND 9.2.4.

```
options {  
    blackhole { <address_match_element>; ... };  
    coresize <size>;  
    datasize <size>;  
    deallocate-on-exit <boolean>; // obsolete  
    directory <quoted_string>;  
    dump-file <quoted_string>;  
    fake-iquery <boolean>; // obsolete  
    files <size>;  
    has-old-clients <boolean>; // obsolete  
    heartbeat-interval <integer>;  
    host-statistics <boolean>; // not implemented  
    host-statistics-max <integer>; // not implemented  
    interface-interval <integer>;  
    listen-on [ port <integer> ] { <address_match_element>; ... };
```

```
listen-on-v6 [ port <integer> ] { <address_match_element>; ... };
match-mapped-addresses <boolean>;
memstatistics-file <quoted_string>; // not implemented
multiple-cnases <boolean>; // obsolete
named-xfer <quoted_string>; // obsolete
pid-file <quoted_string>;
port <integer>;
random-device <quoted_string>;
recursive-clients <integer>;
rrset-order { [ class <string> ] [ type <string> ] [ name
    <quoted_string> ] <string> <string>; ... }; // not implemented
serial-queries <integer>; // obsolete
serial-query-rate <integer>;
stacksize <size>;
statistics-file <quoted_string>;
statistics-interval <integer>; // not yet implemented
tcp-clients <integer>;
tkey-dhkey <quoted_string> <integer>;
tkey-gssapi-credential <quoted_string>;
tkey-domain <quoted_string>;
transfers-per-ns <integer>;
transfers-in <integer>;
transfers-out <integer>;
treat-cr-as-space <boolean>; // obsolete
use-id-pool <boolean>; // obsolete
use-ixfr <boolean>;
version <quoted_string>;
allow-recursion { <address_match_element>; ... };
allow-v6-synthesis { <address_match_element>; ... };
sortlist { <address_match_element>; ... };
topology { <address_match_element>; ... }; // not implemented
auth-nxdomain <boolean>; // default changed
minimal-responses <boolean>;
recursion <boolean>;
provide-ixfr <boolean>;
request-ixfr <boolean>;
fetch-glue <boolean>; // obsolete
rfc2308-type1 <boolean>; // not yet implemented
additional-from-auth <boolean>;
additional-from-cache <boolean>;
query-source <querysource4>;
query-source-v6 <querysource6>;
cleaning-interval <integer>;
min-roots <integer>; // not implemented
lame-ttl <integer>;
max-ncache-ttl <integer>;
max-cache-ttl <integer>;
transfer-format ( many-answers | one-answer );
```

```
max-cache-size <size_no_default>;
check-names <string> <string>; // not implemented
cache-file <quoted_string>;
allow-query { <address_match_element>; ... };
allow-transfer { <address_match_element>; ... };
allow-update-forwarding { <address_match_element>; ... };
allow-notify { <address_match_element>; ... };
notify <notifytype>;
notify-source ( <ipv4_address> | * ) [ port ( <integer> | * ) ];
notify-source-v6 ( <ipv6_address> | * ) [ port ( <integer> | * ) ];
also-notify [ port <integer> ] { ( <ipv4_address> | <ipv6_address>
    ) [ port <integer> ]; ... };
dialup <dialuptype>;
forward ( first | only );
forwarders [ port <integer> ] { ( <ipv4_address> | <ipv6_address> )
    [ port <integer> ]; ... };
maintain-ixfr-base <boolean>; // obsolete
max-ixfr-log-size <size>; // obsolete
transfer-source ( <ipv4_address> | * ) [ port ( <integer> | * ) ];
transfer-source-v6 ( <ipv6_address> | * ) [ port ( <integer> | * ) ];
max-transfer-time-in <integer>;
max-transfer-time-out <integer>;
max-transfer-idle-in <integer>;
max-transfer-idle-out <integer>;
max-retry-time <integer>;
min-retry-time <integer>;
max-refresh-time <integer>;
min-refresh-time <integer>;
sig-validity-interval <integer>;
zone-statistics <boolean>;
};

controls {
    inet ( <ipv4_address> | <ipv6_address> | * ) [ port ( <integer> | *
        ) ] allow { <address_match_element>; ... } [ keys { <string>; ... } ];
    unix <unsupported>; // not implemented
};

acl <string> { <address_match_element>; ... };

logging {
    channel <string> {
        file <logfile>;
        syslog <optional_facility>;
        null;
        stderr;
        severity <logseverity>;
        print-time <boolean>;
    };
};
```

```

        print-severity <boolean>;
        print-category <boolean>;
    };
    category <string> { <string>; ... };
};

view <string> <optional_class> {
    match-clients { <address_match_element>; ... };
    match-destinations { <address_match_element>; ... };
    match-recursive-only <boolean>;
    key <string> {
        algorithm <string>;
        secret <string>;
    };
    zone <string> <optional_class> {
        type ( master | slave | stub | hint | forward );
        allow-update { <address_match_element>; ... };
        file <quoted_string>;
        ixfr-base <quoted_string>; // obsolete
        ixfr-tmp-file <quoted_string>; // obsolete
        masters [ port <integer> ] { ( <ipv4_address> |
            <ipv6_address> ) [ port <integer> ] [ key <string> ]; ... };
        pubkey <integer> <integer> <integer> <quoted_string>; //
            obsolete
        update-policy { ( grant | deny ) <string> ( name |
            subdomain | wildcard | self ) <string> <rrtypelist>; ... };
        database <string>;
        check-names <string>; // not implemented
        allow-query { <address_match_element>; ... };
        allow-transfer { <address_match_element>; ... };
        allow-update-forwarding { <address_match_element>; ... };
        allow-notify { <address_match_element>; ... };
        notify <notifytype>;
        notify-source ( <ipv4_address> | * ) [ port ( <integer> | *
            ) ];
        notify-source-v6 ( <ipv6_address> | * ) [ port ( <integer>
            | * ) ];
        also-notify [ port <integer> ] { ( <ipv4_address> |
            <ipv6_address> ) [ port <integer> ]; ... };
        dialup <dialuptype>;
        forward ( first | only );
        forwarders [ port <integer> ] { ( <ipv4_address> |
            <ipv6_address> ) [ port <integer> ]; ... };
        maintain-ixfr-base <boolean>; // obsolete
        max-ixfr-log-size <size>; // obsolete
        transfer-source ( <ipv4_address> | * ) [ port ( <integer> |
            * ) ];
        transfer-source-v6 ( <ipv6_address> | * ) [ port (

```

```
        <integer> | * ) ];
max-transfer-time-in <integer>;
max-transfer-time-out <integer>;
max-transfer-idle-in <integer>;
max-transfer-idle-out <integer>;
max-retry-time <integer>;
min-retry-time <integer>;
max-refresh-time <integer>;
min-refresh-time <integer>;
sig-validity-interval <integer>;
zone-statistics <boolean>;
};
server {
    bogus <boolean>;
    provide-ixfr <boolean>;
    request-ixfr <boolean>;
    support-ixfr <boolean>; // obsolete
    transfers <integer>;
    transfer-format ( many-answers | one-answer );
    keys <server_key>;
    edns <boolean>;
};
trusted-keys { <string> <integer> <integer> <integer>
    <quoted_string>; ... };
allow-recursion { <address_match_element>; ... };
allow-v6-synthesis { <address_match_element>; ... };
sortlist { <address_match_element>; ... };
topology { <address_match_element>; ... }; // not implemented
auth-nxdomain <boolean>; // default changed
minimal-responses <boolean>;
recursion <boolean>;
provide-ixfr <boolean>;
request-ixfr <boolean>;
fetch-glue <boolean>; // obsolete
rfc2308-type1 <boolean>; // not yet implemented
additional-from-auth <boolean>;
additional-from-cache <boolean>;
query-source <querysource4>;
query-source-v6 <querysource6>;
cleaning-interval <integer>;
min-roots <integer>; // not implemented
lame-ttl <integer>;
max-ncache-ttl <integer>;
max-cache-ttl <integer>;
transfer-format ( many-answers | one-answer );
max-cache-size <size_no_default>;
check-names <string> <string>; // not implemented
cache-file <quoted_string>;
```

```

allow-query { <address_match_element>; ... };
allow-transfer { <address_match_element>; ... };
allow-update-forwarding { <address_match_element>; ... };
allow-notify { <address_match_element>; ... };
notify <notifytype>;
notify-source ( <ipv4_address> | * ) [ port ( <integer> | * ) ];
notify-source-v6 ( <ipv6_address> | * ) [ port ( <integer> | * ) ];
also-notify [ port <integer> ] { ( <ipv4_address> | <ipv6_address>
    ) [ port <integer> ]; ... };
dialup <dialuptype>;
forward ( first | only );
forwarders [ port <integer> ] { ( <ipv4_address> | <ipv6_address> )
    [ port <integer> ]; ... };
maintain-ixfr-base <boolean>; // obsolete
max-ixfr-log-size <size>; // obsolete
transfer-source ( <ipv4_address> | * ) [ port ( <integer> | * ) ];
transfer-source-v6 ( <ipv6_address> | * ) [ port ( <integer> | * ) ];
max-transfer-time-in <integer>;
max-transfer-time-out <integer>;
max-transfer-idle-in <integer>;
max-transfer-idle-out <integer>;
max-retry-time <integer>;
min-retry-time <integer>;
max-refresh-time <integer>;
min-refresh-time <integer>;
sig-validity-interval <integer>;
zone-statistics <boolean>;
};

lwres {
    listen-on [ port <integer> ] { ( <ipv4_address> | <ipv6_address> )
        [ port <integer> ]; ... };
    view <string> <optional_class>;
    search { <string>; ... };
    ndots <integer>;
};

key <string> {
    algorithm <string>;
    secret <string>;
};

zone <string> <optional_class> {
    type ( master | slave | stub | hint | forward );
    allow-update { <address_match_element>; ... };
    file <quoted_string>;
    ixfr-base <quoted_string>; // obsolete
    ixfr-tmp-file <quoted_string>; // obsolete
};

```

```

masters [ port <integer> ] { ( <ipv4_address> | <ipv6_address> ) [
    port <integer> ] [ key <string> ]; ... };
pubkey <integer> <integer> <integer> <quoted_string>; // obsolete
update-policy { ( grant | deny ) <string> ( name | subdomain |
    wildcard | self ) <string> <rrtpeplist>; ... };
database <string>;
check-names <string>; // not implemented
allow-query { <address_match_element>; ... };
allow-transfer { <address_match_element>; ... };
allow-update-forwarding { <address_match_element>; ... };
allow-notify { <address_match_element>; ... };
notify <notifytype>;
notify-source ( <ipv4_address> | * ) [ port ( <integer> | * ) ];
notify-source-v6 ( <ipv6_address> | * ) [ port ( <integer> | * ) ];
also-notify [ port <integer> ] { ( <ipv4_address> | <ipv6_address>
    ) [ port <integer> ]; ... };
dialup <dialuptype>;
forward ( first | only );
forwarders [ port <integer> ] { ( <ipv4_address> | <ipv6_address> )
    [ port <integer> ]; ... };
maintain-ixfr-base <boolean>; // obsolete
max-ixfr-log-size <size>; // obsolete
transfer-source ( <ipv4_address> | * ) [ port ( <integer> | * ) ];
transfer-source-v6 ( <ipv6_address> | * ) [ port ( <integer> | * ) ];
max-transfer-time-in <integer>;
max-transfer-time-out <integer>;
max-transfer-idle-in <integer>;
max-transfer-idle-out <integer>;
max-retry-time <integer>;
min-retry-time <integer>;
max-refresh-time <integer>;
min-refresh-time <integer>;
sig-validity-interval <integer>;
zone-statistics <boolean>;
};

server {
    bogus <boolean>;
    provide-ixfr <boolean>;
    request-ixfr <boolean>;
    support-ixfr <boolean>; // obsolete
    transfers <integer>;
    transfer-format ( many-answers | one-answer );
    keys <server_key>;
    edns <boolean>;
};

trusted-keys { <string> <integer> <integer> <integer> <quoted_string>; ... };

```



# Multicast DNS and Service Discovery

Two extensions to the DNS protocol are multicast DNS (mDNS) and DNS Service Discovery (DNS-SD). mDNS extends the Domain Name Service system to operate over link-local multicast. DNS-SD adds support needed to discover network services over DNS.

## Multicast DNS

Multicast DNS (mDNS) provides a naming service system that is easy to set up and maintain, for computers on a local link. All participating network devices on the same local link perform standard DNS functions, using multicast DNS rather than unicast, and do not need a unicast DNS server. For administrators, the primary advantage of mDNS is that no unicast DNS server needs to be maintained on the local network. There is no need, for example, to update and maintain host names in files to resolve hostname to IP address for devices on the local link that are using mDNS.

## Service Discovery

Network services include printing, file transfer, music sharing, servers for photo, document and other file sharing, and services provided by other local devices. DNS service discovery support in the Solaris OS includes open source framework and tools from Apple to enable applications to advertise and discover network services, using DNS on the Solaris OS.

For users, network service discovery makes computing easier by enabling users to browse for services on the network, rather than needing to find the service manually. Existing standards, and work done by other companies and groups, assure that cross-platform support is available.

## Administering mDNS

Use the Service Management Facility (SMF) to administer the mDNS daemon. You can use SMF to start and stop the mDNS service.

For an overview of SMF, refer to [Chapter 17, “Managing Services \(Overview\),”](#) in *System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*. Also refer to the `svcadm(1M)` and `svcs(1)` man pages for more details.

## mDNS Deployment

For mDNS to function, it must be deployed on all peers that are to participate in mDNS. It is used to advertise the availability of services provided on the peer.

Multicast DNS and Service Discovery are both installed by default in the “all” cluster, when installing the Solaris OS. For other types of devices, for example, printers, music, video, and communication devices, many already have mDNS installed.

In addition to being installed, mDNS must be enabled, and must be included in the `/etc/nsswitch.conf` file. See [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#)

## Enable mDNS

For the Solaris OS, as root, or as a user with appropriate privileges, enable mDNS on each computer that will participate in mDNS.

```
# svcadm enable svc:/network/dns/multicast:default
```

Enabling mDNS this way persists through upgrades and reboots. For more information, see [svcadm\(1M\)](#).

## Edit `nsswitch.conf`

To be able to resolve local hosts, edit the `nsswitch.conf` file and add `mdns` to the list of name services. For example, the file might look like the following:

```
# /etc/nsswitch.conf
hosts: files dns mdns
ipnodes: files dns mdns
```

For an example of the form such a file should take, see `/etc/nsswitch.conf.dns`.

## Review Errors or Messages

Check the multicast DNS service log for errors or messages.

```
/var/svc/log/network-dns-multicast:default.log
```

## mDNS and `dns-sd` Tool

Use the `dns-sd` command as a network diagnosis tool, to browse and discover services, similar to how you would use `ping (1M)` or `traceroute (1M)`.

The `dns-sd` command is intended primarily for interactive use, mainly because its command line arguments and its output format can change over time, which makes invoking it from a shell script unpredictable and risky. Additionally, the asynchronous nature of DNS Service Discovery does not easily lend itself to script-oriented programming.

For complete `dns-sd` information, see the man page for `dns-sd (1M)` and to incorporate DNS service in applications, see the `libdns_sd (3DNS_SD)` man page.

#### EXAMPLES of the `dns-sd` command

##### Advertising a printing service

The following command advertises the existence of LPR printing service on port 515 on “My Test” machine, so that it will be available to DNS-SD compatible printing clients:

```
dns-sd -R "My Test" _printer._tcp . . 515 pdl=application/postscript
```

For this registration to be useful, the LPR service should be available on port 515.

##### Advertising a web page

The following command advertises a web page being served by an HTTP server on port 80 on My Test machine. The web page will appear on the Bonjour list in Safari and other DNS-SD compatible Web clients:

```
dns-sd -R "My Test" _http._tcp . . 80 path=/path-to-page.html
```





**PART III**

## NIS Setup and Administration

This part provides an overview of the NIS naming service, as well as the setup, administration and troubleshooting of NIS within the Solaris OS.



# Network Information Service (NIS) (Overview)

---

This chapter provides an overview of the Network Information Service (NIS).

NIS is a distributed naming service. It is a mechanism for identifying and locating network objects and resources. It provides a uniform storage and retrieval method for network-wide information in a transport-protocol and media-independent fashion.

This chapter covers the following topics.

- “NIS Introduction” on page 71
- “NIS Machine Types” on page 73
- “NIS Elements” on page 74
- “NIS Binding” on page 81

## NIS Introduction

By running NIS, the system administrator can distribute administrative databases, called *maps*, among a variety of servers (*master* and *slaves*). The administrator can update those databases from a centralized location in an automatic and reliable fashion to ensure that all clients share the same naming service information in a consistent manner throughout the network.

NIS was developed independently of DNS and has a slightly different focus. Whereas DNS focuses on making communication simpler by using machine names instead of numerical IP addresses, NIS focuses on making network administration more manageable by providing centralized control over a variety of network information. NIS stores information not only about machine names and addresses, but also about users, the network itself, and network services. This collection of network *information* is referred to as the NIS *namespace*.

---

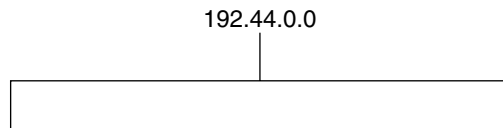
**Note** – In some contexts *machine* names are referred to as *host* names or *machine* names. This discussion uses *machine*, but some screen messages or NIS map names might use *host* or *machine*.

---

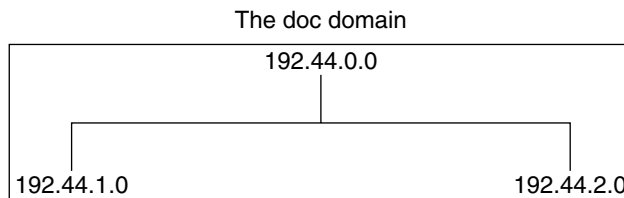
## NIS Architecture

NIS uses a client-server arrangement. NIS servers provide services to NIS clients. The principal servers are called *master* servers, and for reliability, they have backup, or *slave* servers. Both master and slave servers use the NIS information retrieval software and both store NIS maps.

NIS uses domains to arrange the machines, users, and networks in its namespace. However, it does not use a domain hierarchy; an NIS namespace is flat.



Thus, this physical network would be arranged into one NIS domain.



An NIS domain cannot be connected directly to the Internet using just NIS. However, organizations that want to use NIS and also be connected to the Internet can combine NIS with DNS. You can use NIS to manage all local information and use DNS for Internet host lookup. NIS provides a forwarding service that forwards host lookups to DNS if the information cannot be found in an NIS map. The Solaris system also allows you to set up the `nsswitch.conf` file so that hosts lookup requests go only to DNS, or to DNS and then NIS if not found by DNS, or to NIS and then DNS if not found by NIS. See [Chapter 2, “The Name Service Switch \(Overview\),”](#) for details.



# NIS Machine Types

There are three types of NIS machines.

- Master server
- Slave servers
- Clients of NIS servers

Any machine can be an NIS client, but only machines with disks should be NIS servers, either master or slave. Servers are also clients, typically of themselves.

## NIS Servers

The NIS server does not have to be the same machine as the NFS file server.

NIS servers come in two varieties, master and slave. The machine designated as master server contains the set of maps that the system administrator creates and updates as necessary. Each NIS domain must have one, and only one, master server, which can propagate NIS updates with the least performance degradation.

You can designate additional NIS servers in the domain as slave servers. A slave server has a complete copy of the master set of NIS maps. Whenever the master server maps are updated, the updates are propagated among the slave servers. Slave servers can handle any overflow of requests from the master server, minimizing “server unavailable” errors.

Normally, the system administrator designates one master server for all NIS maps. However, because each individual NIS map has the machine name of the master server encoded within it, you could designate different servers to act as master and slave servers for different maps. To minimize confusion, designate a single server as the master for all the maps you create within a single domain. The examples in this chapter assume that one server is the master for all maps in the domain.

## NIS Clients

NIS clients run processes that request data from maps on the servers. Clients do not make a distinction between master and slave servers, since all NIS servers should have the same information.

---

**Note** – The Solaris operating system does not support a configuration in which a NIS client and a Native LDAP client co-exist on the same client machine.

---

# NIS Elements

The NIS naming service is composed of the following elements:

- Domains (see “The NIS Domain” on page 74)
- Daemons (see “NIS Daemons” on page 74)
- Utilities (see “NIS Utilities” on page 75)
- Maps (see “NIS Maps” on page 75)
- NIS Command Set (see “NIS-Related Commands” on page 79)

## The NIS Domain

An NIS *domain* is a collection of machines which share a common set of NIS maps. Each domain has a domain name and each machine sharing the common set of maps belongs to that domain.

Any machine can belong to a given domain, as long as there is a server for that domain's maps in the same network. An NIS client machine obtains its domain name and binds to an NIS server as part of its boot process.

## NIS Daemons

NIS service is provided by five daemons as shown in [Table 4–1](#). The NIS service is managed by the Service Management Facility. Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or restarting, can be performed by using the `svcadm` command. For an overview of SMF, refer to [Chapter 17, “Managing Services \(Overview\),” in \*System Administration Guide: Basic Administration\*](#). Also refer to the `svcadm(1M)` and `svcs(1)` man pages for more details.

TABLE 4–1 NIS Daemons

Daemon	Function
<code>ypserv</code>	Server process
<code>ypbind</code>	Binding process
<code>ypxfrd</code>	High speed map transfer
<code>rpc.yppasswdd</code>	NIS password update daemon ** See NOTE below.**
<code>rpc.yppupdated</code>	Modifies other maps such as <code>publickey</code>

---

**Note** – `rpc.yppasswdd` considers all shells that begin with an `r` to be restricted. For example, if you are in `/bin/rksh`, you are not allowed to change from that shell to another one. If you have a shell that begins with `r` but is not intended to be restricted as such, refer to [Chapter 7, “NIS Troubleshooting,”](#) for the workaround.

---

## NIS Utilities

NIS service is supported by nine utilities as shown in [Table 4–2](#).

TABLE 4–2 NIS Utilities

Utility	Function
<code>makedbm</code>	Creates <code>dbm</code> file for an NIS map
<code>ypcat</code>	Lists data in a map
<code>ypinit</code>	Builds and installs an NIS database and initializes NIS client's <code>ypservers</code> list.
<code>ypmatch</code>	Finds a specific entry in a map
<code>yppoll</code>	Gets a map order number from a server
<code>yppush</code>	Propagates data from NIS master to NIS slave server
<code>ypset</code>	Sets binding to a particular server
<code>ypwhich</code>	Lists name of the NIS server and nickname translation table
<code>ypxfr</code>	Transfers data from master to slave NIS server

## NIS Maps

The information in NIS maps is stored in `ndbm` format. [ypfiles\(4\)](#) and [ndbm\(3C\)](#) explain the format of the map file.

NIS maps were designed to replace UNIX `/etc` files, as well as other configuration files, so they store much more than names and addresses. On a network running NIS, the NIS master server for each NIS domain maintains a set of NIS maps for other machines in the domain to query. NIS slave servers also maintain duplicates of the master server's maps. NIS client machines can obtain namespace information from either master or slave servers.

NIS maps are essentially two-column tables. One column is the *key* and the other column is information related to the key. NIS finds information for a client by searching through the keys. Some information is stored in several maps because each map uses a different key. For example, the names and addresses of machines are stored in two maps: `hosts.byname` and

`hosts.byaddr`. When a server has a machine's name and needs to find its address, it looks in the `hosts.byname` map. When it has the address and needs to find the name, it looks in the `hosts.byaddr` map.

An `NIS Makefile` is stored in the `/var/yp` directory of machines designated as an NIS server at installation time. Running `make` in that directory causes `makedbm` to create or modify the default NIS maps from the input files.

---

**Note** – Always create maps on the master server, as maps created on a slave will not automatically be pushed to the master server.

---

## Default NIS Maps

A default set of NIS maps are provided in the Solaris system. You might want to use all these maps or only some of them. NIS can also use whatever maps you create or add when you install other software products.

Default maps for an NIS domain are located in each server's `/var/yp/domainname` directory. For example, the maps that belong to the domain `test.com` are located in each server's `/var/yp/test.com` directory.

[Table 4–3](#) describes the default NIS maps, information they contain, and whether the software consults the corresponding administrative files when NIS is running.

**TABLE 4–3** NIS Map Descriptions

Map Name	Corresponding NIS Admin File	Description
<code>audit_user</code>	<code>audit_user</code>	Contains user auditing preselection data.
<code>auth_attr</code>	<code>auth_attr</code>	Contains authorization names and descriptions.
<code>bootparams</code>	<code>bootparams</code>	Contains path names of files clients need during boot: <code>root</code> , <code>swap</code> , possibly others.
<code>ethers.byaddr</code>	<code>ethers</code>	Contains machine names and Ethernet addresses. The Ethernet address is the key in the map.
<code>ethers.byname</code>	<code>ethers</code>	Same as <code>ethers.byaddr</code> , except the key is machine name instead of the Ethernet address.
<code>exec_attr</code>	<code>exec_attr</code>	Contains profile execution attributes.
<code>group.bygid</code>	<code>group</code>	Contains group security information with group ID as key.
<code>group.byname</code>	<code>group</code>	Contains group security information with group name as key.

TABLE 4-3 NIS Map Descriptions (Continued)

Map Name	Corresponding NIS Admin File	Description
hosts.byaddr	hosts	Contains machine name, and IP address, with IP address as key.
hosts.byname	hosts	Contains machine name and IP address, with machine (host) name as key.
mail.aliases	aliases	Contains aliases and mail addresses, with aliases as key.
mail.byaddr	aliases	Contains mail address and alias, with mail address as key.
netgroup.byhost	netgroup	Contains group name, user name and machine name.
netgroup.byuser	netgroup	Same as netgroup.byhost, except that key is user name.
netgroup	netgroup	Same as netgroup.byhost, except that key is group name.
netid.byname	passwd, hosts group	Used for UNIX-style authentication. Contains machine name and mail address (including domain name). If there is a netid file available it is consulted in addition to the data available through the other files.
netmasks.byaddr	netmasks	Contains network mask to be used with IP submitting, with the address as key.
networks.byaddr	networks	Contains names of networks known to your system and their IP addresses, with the address as key.
networks.byname	networks	Same as networks.byaddr, except key is name of network.
passwd.adjunct.byname	passwd and shadow	Contains auditing information and the hidden password information for C2 clients.
passwd.byname	passwd and shadow	Contains password information with user name as key.
passwd.byuid	passwd and shadow	Same as passwd.byname, except that key is user ID.
prof_attr	prof_attr	Contains attributes for execution profiles.
protocols.byname	protocols	Contains network protocols known to your network.

**TABLE 4-3** NIS Map Descriptions (Continued)

Map Name	Corresponding NIS Admin File	Description
<code>protocols.bynumber</code>	<code>protocols</code>	Same as <code>protocols.byname</code> , except that key is protocol number.
<code>rpc.bynumber</code>	<code>rpc</code>	Contains program number and name of RPCs known to your system. Key is RPC program number.
<code>services.byname</code>	<code>services</code>	Lists Internet services known to your network. Key is port or protocol.
<code>services.byservice</code>	<code>services</code>	Lists Internet services known to your network. Key is service name.
<code>user_attr</code>	<code>user_attr</code>	Contains extended attributes for users and roles.
<code>ypservers</code>	N/A	Lists NIS servers known to your network.

New `ipnodes` maps (`ipnodes.byaddr` and `ipnodes.byname`) are added to NIS. The maps store both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

**Note** – Starting with Solaris Express 10/06, the Solaris OS does not have two separate `hosts` files. The `/etc/inet/hosts` file is the single `hosts` file that contains both IPv4 and IPv6 entries. You do not need to maintain IPv4 entries in two `hosts` files that always require synchronization. For backward compatibility, the `/etc/inet/ipnodes` file is replaced with a symbolic link of the same name to the `/etc/inet/hosts` file.

For more information, see the [hosts\(4\)](#) man page.

NIS clients and servers can communicate using either IPv4 or IPv6 RPC transports.

The `ageing.byname` mapping contains information used by `yppasswdd` to read and write password aging information to the DIT when the NIS-to-LDAP transition is implemented. If password aging is not being used, then it can be commented out of the mapping file. For more information about the NIS-to-LDAP transition, see [Chapter 15, “Transitioning From NIS to LDAP \(Overview/Tasks\)”](#).

## Using NIS Maps

NIS makes updating network databases much simpler than with the `/etc` files system. You no longer have to change the administrative `/etc` files on every machine each time you modify the network environment.

For example, when you add a new machine to a network running NIS, you only have to update the input file in the master server and run `make`. This automatically updates the `hosts.byname` and `hosts.byaddr` maps. These maps are then transferred to any slave servers and are made

available to all of the domain's client machines and their programs. When a client machine or application requests a machine name or address, the NIS server refers to the `hosts.byname` or `hosts.byaddr` map as appropriate and sends the requested information to the client.

You can use the `ypcat` command to display the values in a map. The `ypcat` basic format is the following.

```
% ypcat mapname
```

where *mapname* is the name of the map you want to examine or its *nickname*. If a map is composed only of keys, as in the case of `ypservers`, use `ypcat -k`. Otherwise, `ypcat` prints blank lines. The [ypcat\(1\)](#) man page describes more options for `ypcat`.

You can use the `ypwhich` command to determine which server is the master of a particular map. Type the following.

```
% ypwhich -m mapname
```

where *mapname* is the name or the nickname of the map whose master you want to find. `ypwhich` responds by displaying the name of the master server. For complete information, refer to the [ypwhich\(1\)](#) man page.

## NIS Map Nicknames

*Nicknames* are aliases for full map names. To obtain a list of available map nicknames, such as `passwd` for `passwd.byname`, type `ypcat -x` or `ypwhich -x`.

Nicknames are stored in the `/var/yp/nicknames` file, which contains a map nickname followed by the fully specified name for the map, separated by a space. This list might be added to or modified. Currently, there is a limit of 500 nicknames.

## NIS-Related Commands

The NIS service includes specialized daemons, system programs, and commands, which are summarized in the following table.

TABLE 4-4 NIS Command Summary

Command	Description
<code>ypserv</code>	Serves NIS clients' requests for information from an NIS map. <code>ypserv</code> is a daemon that runs on NIS servers with a complete set of maps. At least one <code>ypserv</code> daemon must be present on the network for NIS service to function.

TABLE 4-4 NIS Command Summary (Continued)

Command	Description
<code>ypbind</code>	Provides NIS server binding information to clients. It provides binding by finding a <code>ypserv</code> process that serves maps within the domain of the requesting client. <code>ypbind</code> must run on all servers and clients.
<code>ypinit</code>	Automatically creates maps for an NIS server from the input files. It is also used to construct the initial <code>/var/yp/binding/domain/ypservers</code> file on the clients. Use <code>ypinit</code> to set up the master NIS server and the slave NIS servers for the first time.
<code>make</code>	Updates NIS maps by reading the <code>Makefile</code> (when run in the <code>/var/yp</code> directory). You can use <code>make</code> to update all maps based on the input files or to update individual maps. The <a href="#">ypmake(1M)</a> man page describes the functionality of <code>make</code> for NIS.
<code>makedbm</code>	<code>makedbm</code> takes an input file and converts it into <code>dbm.dir</code> and <code>dbm.pag</code> files – valid <code>dbm</code> files that NIS can use as maps. You can also use <code>makedbm -u</code> to disassemble a map, so that you can see the key-value pairs that comprise it.
<code>ypxfr</code>	Pulls an NIS map from a remote server to the local <code>/var/yp/domain</code> directory, using NIS itself as the transport medium. You can run <code>ypxfr</code> interactively, or periodically from a <code>crontab</code> file. It is also called by <code>ypserv</code> to initiate a transfer.
<code>ypxfrd</code>	Provides map transfers service for <code>ypxfr</code> requests (generally slave servers). It is run only on the master server.
<code>yppush</code>	Copies a new version of an NIS map from the NIS master server to its slaves. You run it on the master NIS server.
<code>ypset</code>	Tells a <code>ypbind</code> process to bind to a named NIS server. This is not for casual use and its use is discouraged because of security implications. See the <a href="#">ypset(1M)</a> and <a href="#">ypbind(1M)</a> man pages for information about the <code>ypset</code> and <code>ypsetme</code> options to the <code>ypbind</code> process.
<code>ypoll</code>	Tells which version of an NIS map is running on a server that you specify. It also lists the master server for the map.
<code>ypcat</code>	Displays the contents of an NIS map.
<code>ypmatch</code>	Prints the value for one or more specified keys in an NIS map. You cannot specify which version of the NIS server map you are seeing.
<code>ypwhich</code>	Shows which NIS server a client is using at the moment for NIS services, or, if invoked with the <code>-m mapname</code> option, which NIS server is master of each of the maps. If only <code>-m</code> is used, it displays the names of all the maps available and their respective master servers.



# NIS Binding

NIS clients get information from an NIS server through the binding process, which can work in one of two modes: server-list or broadcast.

- **Server-list.** In the server-list mode, the `ybind` process queries the `/var/yp/binding/domain/ypservers` list for the names of all of the NIS servers in the domain. The `ybind` process binds only to servers in this file. The file is created by running `ypinit -c`.
- **Broadcast.** The `ybind` process can also use an RPC broadcast to initiate a binding. Since broadcasts are only local subnet events that are not routed further, there must be at least one server (master or slave) on the same subnet as the client. The servers themselves might exist throughout different subnets since map propagation works across subnet boundaries. In a subnet environment, one common method is to make the subnet router an NIS server. This allows the domain server to serve clients on either subnet interface.

## Server-List Mode

The binding process in server-list mode works as follows:

1. Any program, running on the NIS client machine that needs information provided by an NIS map, asks `ybind` for the name of a server.
2. `ybind` looks in the `/var/yp/binding/domainname/ypservers` file for a list of NIS servers for the domain.
3. `ybind` initiates binding to the first server in the list. If the server does not respond, `ybind` tries the second, and so on, until it finds a server or exhausts the list.
4. `ybind` tells the client process which server to talk to. The client then sends the request directly to the server.
5. The `ypserv` daemon on the NIS server handles the request by consulting the appropriate map.
6. `ypserv` sends the requested information back to the client.

## Broadcast Mode

The broadcast mode binding process works as follows:

1. `ybind` must be started with the broadcast option set (`broadcast`).
2. `ybind` issues an RPC broadcast in search of an NIS server.

---

**Note** – In order to support such clients, it is necessary to have an NIS server on each subnet requiring NIS service.

---

3. `ybind` initiates binding to the first server that responds to the broadcast.
4. `ybind` tells the client process which server to talk to. The client then sends the request directly to the server.
5. The `yplib` daemon on the NIS server handles the request by consulting the appropriate map.
6. `yplib` sends the requested information back to the client.

Normally, once a client is bound to a server it stays bound to that server until something causes it to change. For example, if a server goes out of service, the clients it served will then bind to new servers.

To find out which NIS server is currently providing service to a specific client, use the following command.

**%ypwhich** *machinename*

Where *machinename* is the name of the client. If no machine name is mentioned, `ypwhich` defaults to the local machine (that is, the machine on which the command is run).

# Setting Up and Configuring NIS Service

---

This chapter describes initial set up and configuration of the Network Information Service (NIS).

---

**Note** – In some contexts, *machine* names are referred to as *host* names or *machine* names. This discussion uses “machine,” but some screen messages or NIS map names might use *host* or *machine*.

---

This chapter covers the following topics.

- “Configuring NIS Task Map” on page 83
- “Before You Begin Configuring NIS” on page 84
- “Planning Your NIS Domain” on page 85
- “Preparing the Master Server” on page 86
- “Starting and Stopping NIS Service on the Master Server” on page 92
- “Setting Up NIS Slave Servers” on page 93
- “Setting Up NIS Clients” on page 95

## Configuring NIS Task Map

---

Task	For Instructions, Go To
Prepare source files for conversion.	“Preparing Source Files for Conversion to NIS Maps” on page 87
Set up master server using <code>ypinit</code>	“Setting Up the Master Server With <code>ypinit</code> ” on page 90
Start NIS on master server.	“Starting and Stopping NIS Service on the Master Server” on page 92

---

Task	For Instructions, Go To
Set up slave servers.	<a href="#">“Setting Up a Slave Server” on page 93</a>
Set up NIS client.	<a href="#">“Setting Up NIS Clients” on page 95</a>

## Before You Begin Configuring NIS

Before configuring your NIS namespace, you must do the following.

- Install properly configured `nsswitch.conf` files on all the machines that will be using NIS. See [Chapter 2, “The Name Service Switch \(Overview\)”](#) for details.
- Plan your NIS domain.

## NIS and the Service Management Facility

The NIS service is managed by the Service Management Facility. For an overview of SMF, refer to [Chapter 17, “Managing Services \(Overview\)”](#) in *System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*. Also refer to the `svcadm(1M)` and `svcs(1)` man pages for more details.

- Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or restarting, can be performed by using the `svcadm` command. However, `ypstart` and `ypstop` can also be used from the command line to start or stop NIS. See the `ypstart(1M)` and `ypstop(1M)` man pages for more information.

---

**Tip** – Temporarily disabling a service by using the `-t` option provides some protection for the service configuration. If the service is disabled with the `-t` option, the original settings would be restored for the service after a reboot. If the service is disabled without `-t`, the service will remain disabled after reboot.

---

- The NIS Fault Managed Resource Identifiers (FMRI) are `svc:/network/nis/server:<instance>` for the NIS server and `svc:/network/nis/client:<instance>` for the NIS client.
- You can query the status of NIS by using the `svcs` command.
  - Examples of `svcs` command and output.

```
# svcs network/nis/server
STATE      STIME      FMRI
online     Jan_10     svc:/network/nis/server:default

# svcs \*nis\*
STATE      STIME      FMRI
disabled   12:39:18   svc:/network/rpc/nisplus:default
```

```

disabled      12:39:18 svc:/network/nis/server:default
disabled      12:39:20 svc:/network/nis/passwd:default
disabled      12:39:20 svc:/network/nis/update:default
disabled      12:39:20 svc:/network/nis/xfr:default
online        12:42:16 svc:/network/nis/client:default

```

- Example of `svcs -l` command and output.

```

# svcs -l /network/nis/client
fmri          svc:/network/nis/client:default
enabled       true
state         online
next_state    none
restarter     svc:/system/svc/restarter:default
contract_id   99
dependency    exclude_all/none svc:/network/nis/server (offline)
dependency    require_all/none svc:/system/identity:domain (online)
dependency    require_all/restart svc:/network/rpc/bind (online)
dependency    require_all/none svc:/system/filesystem/minimal (online)

```

- You can use the `svccfg` utility to get more detailed information about a service. See the [svccfg\(1M\)](#) man page.
- You can check a daemon's presence by using the `ps` command.

```

# ps -e | grep rpcbind
daemon 100806      1  0   Sep 01 ?          25:28  /usr/sbin/rpcbind

```

---

**Note** – Do not use the `-f` option with `ps` because this option attempts to translate user IDs to names, which causes more naming service lookups that might not succeed.

---

## Planning Your NIS Domain

Before you configure machines as NIS servers or clients, you must plan the NIS domain.

Decide which machines will be in your NIS domain. An NIS domain does not have to be congruent with your network. A network can have more than one NIS domain, and there can be machines on your network that are outside of your NIS domain.

Choose an NIS domain name, which can be 256 characters long. A good practice is to limit domain names to no more than 32 characters. Domain names are case-sensitive. For convenience, you can use your Internet domain name as the basis for your NIS domain name. For example, if your Internet domain name is `doc.com`, you can name your NIS domain `doc.com`. If you wanted to divide `doc.com` into two NIS domains, one for the sales department and the other for the manufacturing department, you could name one `sales.doc.com` and the other `manf.doc.com`.

Before a machine can use NIS services, the correct NIS domain name and machine name must be set. A machine's name is set by the machine's `/etc/nodename` file and the machine's domain name is set by the machine's `/etc/defaultdomain` file. These files are read at boot time and the contents are used by the `uname -S` and `domainname` commands, respectively. Diskless machines read these files from their boot server.

## Identify Your NIS Servers and Clients

Select one machine to be the master server. Decide which machines, if any, will be slave servers.

Decide which machines will be NIS clients. Typically all machines in your domain are set to be NIS clients, although this is not necessary.

## Preparing the Master Server

The following sections describe how to prepare the source files and the `passwd` files for the master server.

### Source Files Directory

The source files should be located in the `/etc` directory, on the master server or in some other directory. Having them in `/etc` is undesirable because the contents of the maps are then the same as the contents of the local files on the master server. This is a special problem for `passwd` and `shadow` files because all users have access to the master server maps and the root password would be passed to all NIS clients through the `passwd` map. See [“Passwd Files and Namespace Security” on page 86](#) for additional information.

However, if you put the source files in some other directory, you must modify the `Makefile` in `/var/yp` by changing the `DIR=/etc` line to `DIR=/your-choice`, where *your-choice* is the name of the directory you will be using to store the source files. This allows you to treat the local files on the server as if they were those of a client. (It is good practice to first save a copy of the original `Makefile`.)

In addition, if `audit_user`, `auth_attr`, `exec_attr` and `prof_attr` are to be taken from a directory other than the default, you must amend the `RBACDIR=/etc/security` to `RBACDIR=/your-choice`.

### Passwd Files and Namespace Security

The `passwd` map is a special case. In addition to the old Solaris 1 `passwd` file format, this implementation of NIS accepts the `/etc/passwd` and `/etc/shadow` file formats as input for building the NIS password maps.

For security reasons, the files used to build the NIS password maps should not contain an entry for `root`, to prevent unauthorized root access. Therefore, the password maps should not be built from the files located in the master server's `/etc` directory. The password files used to build the password maps should have the `root` entry removed from them and be located in a directory that can be protected from unauthorized access.

For example, the master server password input files should be stored in a directory such as `/var/yp`, or any directory of your choice, as long as the file itself is not a link to another file and its location is specified in the `Makefile`. The correct directory option is set automatically according to the configuration specified in your `Makefile`.




---

**Caution** – Be sure that the `passwd` file in the directory specified by `PWDDIR` does not contain an entry for `root`.

---

If your source files are in a directory other than `/etc`, you must alter the `PWDIR` password macro in the `Makefile` to refer to the directory where the `passwd` and `shadow` files reside, changing the line `PWDIR=/etc` to `PWDIR/your-choice`, where *your-choice* is the name of the directory you will be using to store the `passwd` map source files.

## Preparing Source Files for Conversion to NIS Maps

Prepare the source files for conversion to NIS maps.

### ▼ How to Prepare Source Files for Conversion

#### 1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role.

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control \(Tasks\),” in \*System Administration Guide: Security Services\*](#).

#### 2 Check the source files on the master server to make sure they reflect an up-to-date picture of your system.

Check the following files:

- `auto.home` or `auto_home`
- `auto.master` or `auto_master`
- `audit_user`
- `auth_attr`
- `bootparams`
- `ethers`
- `exec_attr`
- `group`

- `hosts`
- `ipnodes`
- `netgroup`
- `netmasks`
- `networks`
- `passwd`
- `protocols`
- `rpc`
- `service`
- `shadow`
- `user_attr`

**3 Copy all of these source files, except `passwd`, to the `DIR` directory that you have selected.**

**4 Copy the `passwd` file to the `PWDIR` directory that you have selected.**

**5 Copy `audit_user`, `auth_attr`, `exec_attr`, and `prof_attr` to the selected `RBACDIR` directory.**

**6 Check the `/etc/mail/aliases` file.**

Unlike other source files, the `/etc/mail/aliases` file cannot be moved to another directory. This file must reside in the `/etc/mail` directory. Refer to [aliases\(4\)](#) for more information.

---

**Note** – You can add a nis-specific mail aliases file by pointing the `ALIASES = /etc/mail/aliases` entry in `/var/yp/Makefile` to another location. When you then run a `make`, the `ALIASES` entry creates a `mail.aliases` map. The `sendmail` service uses this map in addition to the `/etc/mail/aliases` file when the `/etc/nsswitch.conf` file properly targets `nis` in addition to `files`. Refer to “[Modifying and Using the Makefile](#)” on page 105.

---

**7 Clean all comments and other extraneous lines and information from the source files.**

These operations can be done through a `sed` or `awk` script or with a text editor. The `Makefile` performs some file cleaning automatically for you, but it is good practice to examine and clean these files by hand before running.

**8 Make sure that the data in all the source files is correctly formatted.**

Source file data needs to be in the correct format for that particular file. Check the man pages for the different files to make sure that each file is in the correct format.



## Preparing the Makefile

After checking the source files and copying them into the source file directory, you now need to convert those source files into the ndbm format maps that the NIS service uses. This is done automatically for you by `ypinit` when called on the master server, as explained in “[Setting Up the Master Server With ypinit](#)” on page 90.

The `ypinit` script calls the program `make`, which uses the `Makefile` located in the `/var/yp` directory. A default `Makefile` is provided for you in the `/var/yp` directory and contains the commands needed to transform the source files into the desired ndbm format maps.

You can use the default `Makefile` as it is, or modify it if you want. (If you do modify the default `Makefile`, be sure to first copy and store the original default `Makefile` in case you need it for future use.) You might need to make one or more of the following modifications to the `Makefile`:

- *Nondefault maps*

If you have created your own non-default source files and want to convert them to NIS maps, you must add those source files to the `Makefile`.

- *DIR value*

If you want the `Makefile` to use source files stored in some directory other than `/etc`, as explained in “[Source Files Directory](#)” on page 86, you must change the value of `DIR` in the `Makefile` to the directory that you want to use. When changing this value in the `Makefile`, do not indent the line.

- *PWDIR value*

If you want the `Makefile` to use `passwd`, `shadow`, and/or `adjunct` source files stored in some directory other than `/etc`, you must change the value of `PWDIR` in the `Makefile` to the directory that you want to use. When changing this value in the `Makefile`, do not indent the line.

- *Domain name resolver*

If you want the NIS server to use the domain name resolver for machines not in the current domain, comment out the `Makefile` line `B=`, and uncomment (activate) the line `B=-b`.

The function of the `Makefile` is to create the appropriate NIS maps for each of the databases listed under `all`. After passing through `makedbm` the data is collected in two files, `mapname.dir` and `mapname.pag`. Both files are in the `/var/yp/domainname` directory on the master server.

The `Makefile` builds `passwd` maps from the `/PWDIR/passwd`, `/PWDIR/shadow`, and `/PWDIR/security/passwd.adjunct` files, as appropriate.

## Setting Up the Master Server With `ypinit`

The `ypinit` script sets up master and slave servers and clients to use NIS. It also initially runs `make` to create the maps on the master server.

To use `ypinit` to build a fresh set of NIS maps on the master server, do the following.

### ▼ How to set up the master server using `ypinit`

**1 On the master server, become superuser or assume an equivalent role.**

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control \(Tasks\),” in \*System Administration Guide: Security Services\*](#).

**2 Copy the contents of the `nsswitch.files` file to the `nsswitch.conf` file.**

```
# cp /etc/nsswitch.files /etc/nsswitch.conf
```

**3 Edit the `/etc/hosts` or `/etc/inet/ipnodes` file to add the name and IP address of each of the NIS servers.**

**4 Build new maps on the master server.**

```
# /usr/sbin/ypinit -m
```

**5 When `ypinit` prompts for a list of other machines to become NIS slave servers, type the name of the server you are working on, along with the names of your NIS slave servers.**

**6 When `ypinit` asks whether you want the procedure to terminate at the first nonfatal error or continue despite nonfatal errors, type `y`.**

When you choose `y`, `ypinit` exits upon encountering the first problem; you can then fix it and restart `ypinit`. This is recommended if you are running `ypinit` for the first time. If you prefer to continue, you can try to manually fix all problems that occur, and then restart `ypinit`.

---

**Note** – A nonfatal error can appear when some of the map files are not present. This is not an error that affects the functionality of NIS. You might need to add maps manually if they were not created automatically. Refer to [“Default NIS Maps” on page 76](#) for a description of all default NIS maps.

---

**7 `ypinit` asks whether the existing files in the `/var/yp/domainname` directory can be destroyed.**

This message is displayed only if NIS has been previously installed.

**8 After `ypinit` has constructed the list of servers, it invokes `make`.**

This program uses the instructions contained in the `Makefile` (either the default one or the one you modified) located in `/var/yp`. The `make` command cleans any remaining comment lines from the files you designated. It also runs `makedbm` on the files, creating the appropriate maps and establishing the name of the master server for each map.

If the map or maps being pushed by the `Makefile` correspond to a domain other than the one returned by the command `domainname` on the master, you can make sure that they are pushed to the correct domain by starting `make` in the `ypinit` shell script with a proper identification of the variable `DOM`, as follows:

```
# make DOM=domainname password
```

This pushes the `password` map to the intended domain, instead of the domain to which the master belongs.

**9 To enable NIS as the naming service, type the following.**

```
# cp /etc/nsswitch.nis /etc/nsswitch.conf
```

This replaces the current switch file with the default NIS-oriented switch file. You can edit this file as necessary.

## Master Supporting Multiple NIS Domains

Normally, an NIS master server supports only one NIS domain. However, if you are using a master server to support multiple domains, you must slightly modify the steps, as described in [“Setting Up the Master Server With `ypinit`” on page 90](#), when setting up the server to serve the additional domains.

Run the `domainname` command on the server. The domain name returned by the command is the server's default domain. The steps described in [“Setting Up the Master Server With `ypinit`” on page 90](#) will work properly for setting up service for that domain. To configure service for any *other* domain, you must modify the `ypinit` shell script as follows.

```
# make DOM=correct-domain passwd
```

`correct-domain` is the name of the other domain that you are setting up service for, and `passwd` is the `make` target. This command pushes the `passwd` map to the intended domain, instead of the domain to which the master belongs.

## Starting and Stopping NIS Service on the Master Server

Now that the master maps are created, you can start the NIS daemons on the master server and begin service. When you enable the NIS service, `ypserv` and `ypbind` start on the server. When a client requests information from the server, `ypserv` is the daemon that answers information requests from clients after looking them up in the NIS maps. The `ypserv` and `ypbind` daemons are administered as a unit.

There are three ways that NIS service can be started or stopped on a server:

- By automatically invoking the `/usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypstart` script during the boot process
- By using the Service Management Facility `svcadm enable <fmri>` and `svcadm disable <fmri>` commands from the command line  
See [svcadm\(1M\)](#) for more information about SMF.
- By using the `ypstart(1M)` and `ypstop(1M)` commands from the command line

### Starting NIS Service Automatically

After the NIS master server has been configured by running `ypinit`, `ypstart` is automatically invoked to start up `ypserv` when the machine is booted. See “[Setting Up the Master Server With ypinit](#)” on page 90.

### Starting and Stopping NIS From the Command Line

Use the Service Management Facility `svcadm` commands or the `ypstart/ypstop` commands to start and stop NIS from the command line. When using `svcadm`, the instance name is needed only if you are running more than one instance of the service. For more information, see “[NIS and the Service Management Facility](#)” on page 84, or see the [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [ypstart\(1M\)](#), and [ypstop\(1M\)](#) man pages.

To begin NIS service from the command line, run the `svcadm enable` command or the `ypstart` command.

```
# svcadm enable network/nis/server:<instance>
# svcadm enable network/nis/client:<instance>
or
# ypstart
```

---

**Note** – Because there is a slight delay before `ypserv` is ready to respond to calls after startup, you should issue a three to five second sleep after `svcadm` when calling it from inside a program or script.

---

To stop NIS service, run the `svcadm disable` command or the `ypstop`.

```
# svcadm disable network/nis/server:<instance>
# svcadm disable network/nis/client:<instance>
or
# ypstop
```

To stop and immediately restart an NIS service, use the `svcadm restart` command.

```
# svcadm restart network/nis/server:<instance>
# svcadm restart network/nis/client:<instance>
```

## Setting Up NIS Slave Servers

Your network can have one or more slave servers. Having slave servers ensures the continuity of NIS services when the master server is not available.

### Preparing a Slave Server

Before actually running `ypinit` to create the slave servers, you should run the `domainname` command on each NIS slave to make sure the domain name is consistent with the master server.

---

**Note** – Domain names are case-sensitive.

---

Make sure that the network is working properly before you configure an NIS slave server. In particular, check to be sure you can use `rcp` to send files from the master NIS server to NIS slaves.

### Setting Up a Slave Server

The following procedure shows how to set up a slave server.

## ▼ How to Set Up a Slave Server

### 1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role.

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control \(Tasks\),” in \*System Administration Guide: Security Services\*](#).

### 2 Edit the `/etc/hosts` or `/etc/inet/ipnodes` file on the slave server to add the name and IP addresses of all the other NIS servers.

### 3 Change directory to `/var/yp` on the slave server.

---

**Note** – You must first configure the new slave server as an NIS client so that it can get the NIS maps from the master for the first time. See [“Setting Up NIS Clients” on page 95](#) for details.

---

### 4 Initialize the slave server as a client.

```
# /usr/sbin/ypinit -c
```

The `ypinit` command prompts you for a list of NIS servers. Enter the name of the local slave you are working on first, then the master server, followed by the other NIS slave servers in your domain in order from the physically closest to the furthest in network terms.

### 5 Determine if the NIS client is running, then start the client service as needed.

```
# svcs network/nis/client
STATE      STIME      FMRI
online     20:32:56   svc:/network/nis/client:default
```

If `svc:/network/nis/client` is displayed with an `online` state, then NIS is running. If the service state is `disabled`, then NIS is not running.

#### a. If the NIS client is running, restart the client service.

```
# svcadm restart network/nis/client
```

#### b. If the NIS client is not running, start the client service.

```
# svcadm enable network/nis/client
```

### 6 If NIS is running, stop and restart the service.

```
# /usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypstop
```

### 7 Type the following to restart `ypbind`.

```
# /usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypstart
```

**8 Initialize this machine as a slave.**

```
# /usr/sbin/ypinit -s master
```

Where *master* is the machine name of the existing NIS master server.

Repeat the procedures described in this section for each machine you want configured as an NIS slave server.

**▼ How to Start NIS on a Slave Server**

The following procedure shows how to start NIS on a slave server.

**1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role.**

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control \(Tasks\),” in \*System Administration Guide: Security Services\*](#).

**2 Stop the client service and start all NIS server processes.**

```
# svcadm disable network/nis/client
# svcadm enable network/nis/server
```

## Setting Up NIS Clients

The two methods for configuring a client machine to use NIS as its naming service are explained below.

---

**Note** – The Solaris operating system does not support a configuration in which a NIS client and a Native LDAP client co-exist on the same client machine.

---

- **ypinit.** The recommended method for configuring a client machine to use NIS is to login to the machine as root and run `ypinit -c`.

```
# ypinit -c
```

You will be asked to name NIS servers from which the client obtains naming service information. You can list as many master or slave servers as you want. The servers that you list can be located anywhere in the domain. It is a better practice to first list the servers closest (in network terms) to the machine, than those that are on more distant parts of the net.

- **Broadcast method.** An older method of configuring a client machine to use NIS to log in to the machine as root, set the domain name with the `domainname` command, then run `ypbind`.

`ypstart` will automatically invoke the NIS client in broadcast mode (`ypbind -broadcast`), if the `/var/yp/binding/'domainname'/ypservers` file does not exist.

```
# domainname doc.com
# mv /var/yp/binding/'domainname'/ypservers /var/yp/binding/'domainname'\
/ypservers.bak
# ypstart
```

When you run `ypbind`, it searches the local subnet for an NIS server. If it finds a subnet, `ypbind` binds to it. This search is referred to as *broadcasting*. If there is no NIS server on the client's local subnet, `ypbind` fails to bind and the client machine is not able to obtain namespace data from the NIS service.

---

**Note** – For reasons of security and administrative control it is preferable to specify the servers a client is to bind to in the client's `ypservers` file rather than have the client search for servers through broadcasting. Broadcasting slows down the network, slows the client, and prevents you from balancing server load by listing different servers for different clients.

---



## Administering NIS (Tasks)

---

This chapter describes how to administer NIS. The following topics are covered.

- “Password Files and Namespace Security” on page 97
- “Administering NIS Users” on page 98
- “Working With NIS Maps” on page 101
- “Updating and Modifying Existing Maps” on page 107
- “Adding a Slave Server” on page 113
- “Using NIS With C2 Security” on page 114
- “Changing a Machine's NIS Domain” on page 115
- “Using NIS in Conjunction With DNS” on page 116
- “Turning Off NIS Services” on page 117

---

**Note** – The NIS service is managed by the Service Management Facility. Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or restarting, can be performed by using the `svcadm` command. See “NIS and the Service Management Facility” on page 84 for more information about using SMF with NIS. For an overview of SMF, refer to [Chapter 17, “Managing Services \(Overview\)”](#), in *System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*. Also refer to the `svcadm(1M)` and `svcs(1)` man pages for more details.

NIS services can also be started and stopped by using the `ypstart` and `ypstop` commands. See the `ypstart(1M)` and `ypstop(1M)` man pages for more information.

---

### Password Files and Namespace Security

For security reasons, follow these guidelines.

- It is best to limit access to the NIS maps on the master server.

- The files used to build the NIS password maps should not contain an entry for root to protect against unauthorized access. To accomplish this, the password files used to build the password maps should have the root entry removed from them and be located in a directory other than the master server's /etc directory. This directory should be secured against unauthorized access.

For example, the master server password input files could be stored in a directory such as /var/yp, or any directory of your choice, as long as the file itself is not a link to another file and is specified in the Makefile. When you use either the Service Management Facility or the ypstart script to start the NIS service, the correct directory option is set according to the configuration specified in your Makefile.

---

**Note** – In addition to the older Solaris 1 version passwd file format, this implementation of NIS accepts the Solaris 2 passwd and shadow file formats as input for building the NIS password maps.

---

## Administering NIS Users

This section includes information about setting user passwords, adding new users to an NIS domain, and assigning users to netgroups.

### ▼ How to Add a New NIS User to an NIS Domain

- 1 **On the master NIS server, become superuser or assume an equivalent role.**

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control \(Tasks\),” in \*System Administration Guide: Security Services\*](#).

- 2 **Create the new user's login ID with the useradd command.**

```
# useradd userID
```

*userID* is the login ID of the new user. This command creates entries in the /etc/passwd and /etc/shadow files on the master NIS server.

- 3 **Create the new user's initial password.**

To create an initial password that the new user can use to log in, run the passwd command.

```
# passwd userID
```

Where *userID* is the login ID of the new user. You will be prompted for the password to assign to this user.

This step is necessary because the password entry created by the `useradd` command is locked, which means that the new user cannot log in. By specifying an initial password, you unlock the entry.

**4 If necessary, copy the new entry into the server's `passwd` map input files.**

The map source files on your master server should be in a directory other than `/etc`. Copy and paste the new lines from the `/etc/passwd` and `/etc/shadow` files into the `passwd` map input files on the server. See “[Password Files and Namespace Security](#)” on page 97 for additional information.

For example, if you added the new user `brown`, the line from `/etc/passwd` that you would copy to your `passwd` input file would look like the following.

```
brown:x:123:10:User brown:/home/brown:/bin/csh:
```

The line for `brown` that you would copy from `/etc/shadow` would look like:

```
brown:W12345GkHic:6445:::::::::
```

**5 Make sure that the `Makefile` correctly specifies the directory where the password input file resides.**

**6 If appropriate, delete the new user's entries from `/etc/passwd` and `/etc/shadow` input files.**

For security reasons, do not keep user entries in the NIS master server `/etc/passwd` and `/etc/shadow` files. After copying the entries for the new user to the NIS map source files that are stored in some other directory, use the `userdel` command on the master server to delete the new user.

For example, to delete the new user `brown` from the master server's `/etc` files, you would enter the following.

```
# userdel brown
```

For more information about `userdel`, see the `userdel` man page.

**7 Update the NIS `passwd` maps.**

After you have updated the `passwd` input file on the master server, update the `passwd` maps by running `make` in the directory containing the source file.

```
# userdel brown
# cd /var/yp
# /usr/ccs/bin/make passwd
```

**8 Tell the new user the initial password you have assigned to his or her login ID.**

After logging in, the new user can run `passwd` at any time to establish a different password.

## Setting User Passwords

Users run `passwd` to change their passwords.

% **passwd** *username*

Before users can change their passwords, you must start the `rpc.yppasswdd` daemon on the master server to update the password file.

The `rpc.yppasswdd` daemon starts automatically on the master server. Notice that when the `-m` option is given to `rpc.yppasswdd`, a `make` is forced in `/var/yp` immediately following a modification of the file. If you want to avoid having this `make` take place each time the `passwd` file is changed, remove the `-m` option from the `rpc.yppasswdd` command in the `ypstart` script and control the pushing of the `passwd` maps through the `crontab` file.

---

**Note** – No arguments should follow the `rpc.yppasswdd -m` command. Although you can edit the `ypstart` script file to achieve a different action, it is not recommended that you modify this file other than optionally removing the `-m` option. All commands and daemons invoked by this file with the proper set of command line parameters. If you choose to edit this file, be especially careful when editing the `rpc.yppasswdd` command. If you add an explicit call to the `passwd.adjunct` file, the exact `$PWDIR/security/passwd.adjunct` path must be used; otherwise, incorrect processing results.

---

## NIS Netgroups

NIS netgroups are groups (sets) of users or machines that you define for your administrative purposes. For example, you can create netgroups that do the following.

- Define a set of users who can access a specific machine
- Define a set of NFS client machines to be given some specific file system access
- Define a set of users who are to have administrator privileges on all the machines in a particular NIS domain

Each netgroup is given a netgroup name. Netgroups do not directly set permissions or access rights. Instead, the netgroup names are used by other NIS maps in places where a user name or machine name would normally be used. For example, suppose you created a netgroup of network administrators called `netadmins`. To grant all members of the `netadmins` group access to a given machine, you need only add a `netadmin` entry to that machine's `/etc/passwd` file. Netgroup names can also be added to the `/etc/netgroup` file and propagated to the NIS netgroup map. See [netgroup\(4\)](#) for more detailed information on using netgroups.

On a network using NIS, the `netgroup` input file on the master NIS server is used for generating three maps: `netgroup`, `netgroup.byuser`, and `netgroup.byhost`. The `netgroup` map contains the basic information in the `netgroup` input file. The two other NIS maps contain information in a format that speeds lookups of netgroup information, given the machine or user.

Entries in the `netgroup` input file are in the format: *name ID*, where *name* is the name you give to a netgroup, and *ID* identifies a machine or user who belongs to the netgroup. You can specify as many IDs (members) to a netgroup as you want, separated by commas. For example, to create a netgroup with three members, the `netgroup` input file entry would be in the format: *name ID, ID, ID*. The member IDs in a netgroup input file entry are in the following format.

```
([-|machine], [-|user], [domain])
```

Where *machine* is a machine name, *user* is a user ID, and *domain* is the machine or user's NIS domain. The *domain* element is optional and should only be used to identify machines or users in some other NIS domain. The *machine* and *user* element of each member's entry are required, but a dash (-) is used to denote a null. There is no necessary relationship between the machine and user elements in an entry.

The following are two sample `netgroup` input file entries, each of which create a netgroup named `admins` composed of the users `hauri` and `juanita` who is in the remote domain `sales` and the machines `altair` and `sirius`.

```
admins (altair, hauri), (sirius,juanita,sales)
```

```
admins (altair,-), (sirius,-), (-,hauri), (-,juanita,sales)
```

Various programs use the `netgroup` NIS maps for permission checking during login, remote mount, remote login, and remote shell creation. These programs include `mountd`, `login`, `rlogin`, and `rsh`. The `login` command consults the `netgroup` maps for user classifications if it encounters `netgroup` names in the `passwd` database. The `mountd` daemon consults the `netgroup` maps for machine classifications if it encounters `netgroup` names in the `/etc/dfs/dfstab` file. `rlogin` and `rsh` In fact, any program that uses the `ruserok` interface consults the `netgroup` maps for both machine and user classifications if they encounter `netgroup` names in the `/etc/hosts.equiv` or `.rhosts` files.

If you add a new NIS user or machine to your network, be sure to add them to appropriate netgroups in the `netgroup` input file. Then use the `make` and `yppush` commands to create the netgroup maps and push them to all of your NIS servers. See [netgroup\(4\)](#) for detailed information on using netgroups and netgroup input file syntax.

## Working With NIS Maps

This section contains the following information:

- “Obtaining Map Information” on page 102
- “Changing a Map's Master Server” on page 103
- “Modifying Configuration Files” on page 104
- “Modifying and Using the Makefile” on page 105

## Obtaining Map Information

Users can obtain information from and about the maps at any time by using the `ypcat`, `ypwhich`, and `ypmatch` commands. In the examples that follow, *mapname* refers both to the official name of a map and to its nickname, if any.

To list all the values in a map, type the following.

```
% ypcat mapname
```

To list both the keys and the values (if any) in a map, type the following.

```
% ypcat -k mapname
```

To list all the map nicknames, type any of the following commands.

```
% ypcat -x  
% ypmatch -x  
% ypwhich -x
```

To list all the available maps and their master(s), type the following.

```
% ypwhich -m
```

To list the master server for a particular map, type the following.

```
% ypwhich -m mapname
```

To match a key with an entry in a map, type the following.

```
% ypmatch key mapname
```

If the item you are looking for is not a key in a map, type the following.

```
% ypcat mapname | grep item
```

where *item* is the information for which you are searching. To obtain information about other domains, use the `-d domainname` options of these commands.

If the machine requesting information for a domain other than its default does not have a binding for the requested domain, `ypbind` consults the `/var/yp/binding/domainname/ypservers` file for a list of servers for that domain. If this file does not exist it issues an RPC broadcast for a server. In this case, there must be a server for the requested domain on the same subnet as the requesting machine.

## Changing a Map's Master Server

To change the master server for a selected map, you first have to build the map on the new NIS master. Since the old master server name occurs as a key-value pair in the existing map (this pair is inserted automatically by `makedbm`), copying the map to the new master or transferring a copy to the new master with `ypxfr` is insufficient. You have to reassociate the key with the new master server name. If the map has an ASCII source file, you should copy this file to the new master.

### ▼ How to Change a Map's Master Server

#### 1 On the new master, become superuser or assume an equivalent role.

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control \(Tasks\),”](#) in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

#### 2 Change directories.

```
newmaster# cd /var/yp
```

#### 3 The Makefile must have an entry for the new map before you specify the map to make. If this is not the case, edit the Makefile now, using a map called `sites.byname`.

#### 4 To update or remake the map, type the following.

```
newmaster# make sites.byname
```

#### 5 If the old master remains an NIS server, remote log in (`rlogin`) to the old master and edit Makefile. Make sure you comment out the section of the Makefile that made `sites.byname` so that it is no longer made there.

#### 6 If `sites.byname` only exists as an `ndbm` file, remake it on the new master by disassembling a copy from any NIS server, then running the disassembled version through `makedbm`.

```
newmaster# cd /var/yp
newmaster# ypcat sites.byname | makedbm -domain- /sites.byname
```

After making the map on the new master, you must send a copy of the new map to the other slave servers. Do not use `yppush`, because the other slaves will try to get new copies from the old master, rather than the new one. A typical method for circumventing this is to transfer a copy of the map from the new master back to the old master. To do this, become superuser, or assume an equivalent role, on the old master server and type the following.

```
oldmaster# /usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypxfr -h newmaster sites.byname
```

Now it is safe to run `yppush`. Any remaining slave servers still believe that the old master is the current master and will attempt to get the current version of the map from the old master. When clients do so, they will get the new map, which names the new master as the current master.

If this method fails, you can log in as root on each NIS server and execute the `ypxfr` command shown above.

## Modifying Configuration Files

NIS intelligently parses the setup files. Although this makes NIS administration easier, it does make the behavior of NIS more sensitive to changes in the setup and configuration files.

Use the procedures in this section when modifying any of the following.

- `/var/yp/Makefile` to add or delete supported maps
- Adding or deleting `/etc/resolv.conf` to allow or deny DNS forwarding
- Adding or deleting `$PWDIR/security/passwd.adjunct` to allow or deny C2 security (`$PWDIR` is defined in `/var/yp/Makefile`)

### ▼ How to Modify Configuration Files

You do not have to stop and start NIS when changing NIS maps or the map source files.

Keep the following in mind.

- Deleting a map or source file from an NIS master server does not automatically result in corresponding deletions from slave servers. You must delete maps and source files from slave servers by hand.
- New maps do not automatically get pushed to existing slave servers. You must run `ypxfr` from the slaves.

#### 1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role.

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control \(Tasks\),” in \*System Administration Guide: Security Services\*](#).

#### 2 Stop the NIS server.

```
# svcadm disable network/nis/server
```

#### 3 Make the necessary changes to your files.

#### 4 Start the NIS server.

```
# svcadm enable network/nis/server
```



---

## Modifying and Using the Makefile

You can modify the Makefile provided by default in `/var/yp` to suit your needs. You can add or delete maps, and you can change the names of some of the directories.

---

**Tip** – Keep an unmodified copy of the original Makefile for future reference.

---

### Working With the Makefile

To add a new NIS map, you must get copies of the `ndbm` files for the map into the `/var/yp/domainname` directory on each of the NIS servers in the domain. This is normally done for you by the Makefile. After deciding which NIS server is the master of the map, modify the Makefile on the master server so that you can conveniently rebuild the map. Different servers can be masters of different maps, but in most cases this leads to administrative confusion. Try to set only one server as the master of all maps.

Typically a human-readable text file is filtered through `awk`, `sed`, or `grep` to make it suitable for input to `makedbm`. Refer to the default Makefile for examples. See the [make\(1S\)](#) for general information about the `make` command.

Use the mechanisms already in place in the Makefile when deciding how to create dependencies that `make` will recognize. Be aware that `make` is very sensitive to the presence or absence of tabs at the beginning of lines within the dependency rules. A missing tab can invalidate an entry that is otherwise well formed.

Adding an entry to the Makefile involves the following.

- Adding the name of the database to the `all` rule
- Writing the `time` rule
- Adding the rule for the database

For example, in order for the Makefile to work on automounter input files, you would have to add the `auto_direct.time` and `auto_home.time` maps to the NIS database.

To add these maps to the NIS database you need to modify the Makefile.

### Changing Makefile Macros/Variables

You can change the settings of the variables defined at the top of the Makefile by changing the value to the right of the equal sign (`=`). For instance, if you do not want to use the files located in `/etc` as input for the maps, but you would rather use files located in another directory, such as `/var/etc/domainname`, you should change `DIR` from `DIR=/etc` to `DIR=/var/etc/domainname`. You should also change `PWDIR` from `PWDIR=/etc` to `PWDIR=/var/etc/domainname`.

The variables are the following.

- *DIR*= The directory containing all of the NIS input files except *passwd* and *shadow*. The default value is */etc*. Since it is not good practice to use the files in the master server's */etc* directory as NIS input files, you should change this value.
- *PWDIR*= The directory containing the *passwd* and *shadow* NIS input files. Since it is not good practice to use the files in the master server's */etc* directory as NIS input files, you should change this value.
- *DOM*= The NIS domain name. The default value of *DOM* is set using the *domainname* command. However, most NIS commands use the current machine's domain which is set in the machine's */etc/defaultdomain* file.

## Modifying Makefile Entries

The following procedure describes how to add and delete databases from the Makefile.

### ▼ How to Modify the Makefile to Use Specific Databases

#### 1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role.

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control \(Tasks\),” in \*System Administration Guide: Security Services\*](#).

#### 2 Modify the line that starts with the word *all* by adding the name(s) of the database you want to add:

```
all: passwd group hosts ethers networks rpc services protocols \
    netgroup bootparams aliases netid netmasks \
    audit_user auth_attr exec_attr prof_attr \
    auto_direct auto_home auto_direct.time auto_home.time
```

The order of the entries is not relevant, but the blank space at the beginning of the continuation lines must be a Tab, not spaces.

#### 3 Add the following lines at the end of the Makefile:

```
auto_direct: auto_direct.time
auto_home: auto_home.time
```

#### 4 Add an entry for *auto\_direct.time* in the middle of the file.

```
auto_direct.time: $(DIR)/auto_direct
@ (while read L; do echo $$L; done < $(DIR)/auto_direct
$(CHKPIPE) | \ (sed -e "/^#/d" -e "s/#.*$$/" -e "/^ *$$/d"
$(CHKPIPE) | \ $(MAKEDBM) - $(YPDBDIR)/$(DOM)/auto_direct;
@touch auto_direct.time;
@echo "updated auto_direct";
@if [ ! $(NOPUSH) ]; then $(YPPUSH) auto_direct; fi
```

```
@if [ ! $(NOPUSH) ]; then echo "pushed auto_direct"; fi
```

where

- `CHKPIPE` makes certain that the operations to the left of the pipe (`|`) are successfully completed before piping the results to next commands. If the operations to the left of the pipe do not successfully complete, the process is terminated with a NIS make terminated message.
- `NOPUSH` prevents the `makefile` from calling `yppush` to transfer the new map to the slave servers. If `NOPUSH` is not set, the push is done automatically.

The `while` loop at the beginning is designed to eliminate any backslash-extended lines in the input file. The `sed` script eliminates comment and empty lines.

The same procedure should be followed for all other automounter maps, such as `auto_home`, or any other nondefault maps.

#### 5 Run `make`.

```
# make mapname
```

Where `mapname` is the name of the map you want to make.

### ▼ How to Modify the `Makefile` to Delete Databases

If you do not want the `Makefile` to produce maps for a specific database, edit the `Makefile` as follows.

#### 1 Delete the name of the database from the `all` rule.

#### 2 Delete or comment out the database rule for the database you want to delete.

For example, to delete the `hosts` database, the `hosts.time` entry should be removed.

#### 3 Remove the time rule.

For example, to delete the `hosts` database, the `hosts: hosts.time` entry should be removed.

#### 4 Remove the map from the master and slave servers.

## Updating and Modifying Existing Maps

After you have installed NIS, you might discover that some maps require frequent updating while others never need to change. For example, the `passwd.byname` map can change frequently on a large company's network, while the `auto_master` map changes little, if at all.

As mentioned in “Default NIS Maps” on page 76, the default location of the default NIS maps is on the master server in `/var/yp/domainname`, where `domainname` is the name of the NIS

domain. When you need to update a map, you can use one of two updating procedures, depending on whether or not it is a default map.

- A default map is a map in the default set created by `ypinit` from the network databases.
- Nondefault maps can be any of the following.
  - Maps included with an application purchased from a vendor
  - Maps created specifically for your site
  - Maps created from a nontext file

The following sections explain how to use various updating tools. In practice, you might decide to only use them if you add nondefault maps or change the set of NIS servers after the system is already up and running.

## ▼ How to Update Maps Supplied With the Default Set

Use the following procedure for updating maps supplied with the default set.

### 1 Become a superuser on the master server.

Always modify NIS maps only on the master server.

### 2 Edit the source file for the map you want to change, whether that file resides in `/etc` or in some other directory of your choice.

### 3 Type the following.

```
# cd /var/yp
# make mapname
```

The `make` command then updates your map according to the changes you made in its corresponding file. It also propagates the changes among the other servers.

## Maintaining Updated Maps

The following sections describe additional procedures after you have completed updating maps that are supplied with the default set.

### Propagating an NIS Map

After a map is changed, the `Makefile` uses `yppush` to propagate a new map to the slave servers (unless `NOPUSH` is set in the `Makefile`). It does this by informing the `ypserv` daemon and sending a map transfer request. The `ypserv` daemon on the slave then starts a `ypxfr` process, which in turn contacts the `ypxfrd` daemon on the master server. Some basic checks are made (for example did the map really change?) and then the map is transferred. `ypxfr` on the slave then sends a response to the `yppush` process indicating whether the transfer succeeded.

**Note** – The above procedure will *not* work for newly created maps that do not yet exist on the slave servers. New maps must be sent to the slave servers by running `ypxfr` on the slaves.

---

Occasionally, maps fail to propagate and you must use `ypxfr` manually to send new map information. You can choose to use `ypxfr` in two different ways: periodically through the root `crontab` file, or interactively on the command line. These approaches are discussed in the following sections.

## Using `cron` for Map Transfers

Maps have different rates of change. For instance, some might not change for months at a time, such as `protocols.byname` among the default maps and `auto_master` among the nondefault maps; but `passwd.byname` can change several times a day. Scheduling map transfer using the `crontab` command allows you to set specific propagation times for individual maps.

To periodically run `ypxfr` at a rate appropriate for the map, the root `crontab` file on each slave server should contain the appropriate `ypxfr` entries. `ypxfr` contacts the master server and transfers the map only if the copy on the master server is more recent than the local copy.

---

**Note** – If your master server runs `rpc.yppasswdd` with the default `-m` option, then each time someone changes their `yp` password, the `passwd` daemon runs `make`, which rebuilds the `passwd` maps.

---

## Using Shell Scripts With `cron` and `ypxfr`

As an alternative to creating separate `crontab` entries for each map, you might prefer to have the root `crontab` command run a shell script that periodically updates all maps. Sample map-updating shell scripts are in the `/usr/lib/netsvc/yp` directory. The script names are `ypxfr_1perday`, `ypxfr_1perhour`, and `ypxfr_2perday`. You can modify or replace these shell scripts to fit your site requirements. [Example 6–1](#) shows the default `ypxfr_1perday` shell script.

### EXAMPLE 6-1 `ypxfr_1perday` Shell Script

```
#!/bin/sh
#
# ypxfr_1perday.sh - Do daily yp map check/updates
PATH=/bin:/usr/bin:/usr/lib/netsvc/yp:$PATH
export PATH
# set -xv
ypxfr group.byname
ypxfr group.bygid
ypxfr protocols.byname
ypxfr protocols.bynumber
```

**EXAMPLE 6-1** `ypxfr_1perday` Shell Script (Continued)

```
ypxfr networks.byname
ypxfr networks.byaddr
ypxfr services.byname
ypxfr ypservers
```

This shell script updates the maps once per day, if the root `crontab` is executed daily. You can also have scripts that update maps once a week, once a month, once every hour, and so forth, but be aware of the performance degradation implied in frequently propagating the maps.

Run the same shell scripts as root on each slave server configured for the NIS domain. Alter the exact time of execution from one server to another to avoid bogging down the master.

If you want to transfer the map from a particular slave server, use the `-h machine` option of `ypxfr` within the shell script. Here is the syntax of the commands you put in the script.

```
# /usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypxfr -h machine [ -c ] mapname
```

Where *machine* is the name of the server with the maps you want to transfer, and *mapname* is the name of the requested map. If you use the `-h` option without specifying a machine, `ypxfr` tries to get the map from the master server. If `ypserv` is not running locally at the time `ypxfr` is executed, you must use the `-c` flag so that `ypxfr` does not send a clear current map request to the local `ypserver`.

You can use the `-s domain` option to transfer maps from another domain to your local domain. These maps should be the same across domains. For example, two domains might share the same `services.byname` and `services.byaddr` maps. Alternatively, you can use `rcp`, or `rdist` for more control, to transfer files across domains.

## Directly Invoking `ypxfr`

The second method of invoking `ypxfr` is to run it as a command. Typically, you do this only in exceptional situations – for example, when setting up a temporary NIS server to create a test environment or when trying to quickly get an NIS server that has been out of service consistent with the other servers.

## Logging `ypxfr` Activity

The transfer attempts and results of `ypxfr` can be captured in a log file. If a file called `/var/yp/ypxfr.log` exists, results are appended to it. No attempt to limit the size of the log file is made. To prevent it from growing indefinitely, empty it from time to time by typing the following.

```
# cd /var/yp
# cp ypxfr.log ypxfr.log.old
# cat /dev/null > /var/yp/ypxfr.log
```

You can have `crontab` execute these commands once a week. To turn off logging, remove the log file.

## Modifying Default Maps

To update a nondefault map, you must do the following.

1. Create or edit its corresponding text file.
2. Build (or rebuild) the new or updated map. There are two ways to build a map.
  - Use the `Makefile`. Using the `Makefile` is the preferred method of building a non-default map. If the map has an entry in the `Makefile`, run `make name` where *name* is the name of map you want to build. If the map does not have a `Makefile` entry, try to create one following the instructions in [“Modifying and Using the Makefile” on page 105](#).
  - Use the `/usr/sbin/makedbm` program. `makedbm(1M)` fully describes this command.

## Using `makedbm` to Modify a Non-Default Map

There are two different methods for using `makedbm` to modify maps if you do not have an input file:

- Redirect the `makedbm -u` output to a temporary file, modify the file, then use the modified file as input to `makedbm`.
- Have the output of `makedbm -u` operated on within a pipeline that feeds into `makedbm`. This is appropriate if you can update the disassembled map with either `awk`, `sed`, or a `cat` append.

## Creating New Maps from Text Files

Assume that a text file `/var/yp/mymap.asc` was created with an editor or a shell script on the master. You want to create an NIS map from this file and locate it in the *homedomain* subdirectory. To do this, type the following on the master server.

```
# cd /var/yp
# makedbm mymap.asc homedomain/mymap
```

The *mymap* map now exists on the master server in the directory *homedomain*. To distribute the new map to slave servers run `ypxfr`.

## Adding Entries to a File-Based Map

Adding entries to *mymap* is simple. First, you must modify the text file `/var/yp/mymap.asc`. If you modify the actual `dbm` files without modifying the corresponding text file, the modifications are lost. Then run `makedbm` as shown above.

## Creating Maps From Standard Input

When no original text file exists, create the NIS map from the keyboard by typing input to `makedbm`, as shown below (end with Control-D).

```
ypmaster# cd /var/yp
ypmaster# makedbm -homedomain-/mymapkey1 value1 key2 value2 key3 value3
```

## Modifying Maps Made From Standard Input

If you later need to modify the map, you can use `makedbm` to disassemble the map and create a temporary text intermediate file. To disassemble the map and create a temporary file, type the following.

```
% cd /var/yp
% makedbm -u homedomain/mymap > mymap.temp
```

The resulting temporary file `mymap.temp` has one entry per line. You can edit this file as needed, using any text editor.

To update the map, give the name of the modified temporary file to `makedbm` by typing the following.

```
% makedbm mymap.temp homedomain/mymap
% rm mymap.temp
```

Then propagate the map to the slave servers, by becoming root and typing the following.

```
# yppush mymap
```

The preceding paragraphs explained how to use `makedbm` to create maps; however, almost everything you actually have to do can be done by `ypinit` and `Makefile` unless you add nondefault maps to the database or change the set of NIS servers after the system is already up and running.

Whether you use the `Makefile` in `/var/yp` or some other procedure the goal is the same. A new pair of well-formed dbm files must end up in the maps directory on the master server.



# Adding a Slave Server

After NIS is running, you might need to create an NIS slave server that you did not include in the initial list given to `ypinit`.

To add an NIS slave server:

## ▼ How to Add a Slave Server

### 1 On the master server, become superuser or assume an equivalent role.

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control \(Tasks\),”](#) in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

### 2 Change to the NIS domain directory.

```
# cd /var/yp/domainname
```

### 3 Disassemble the `ypservers` file.

```
# makedbm -u ypservers >/tmp/temp_file
```

The `makedbm` command converts `ypservers` from `ndbm` format to a temporary ASCII file `/tmp/temp_file`.

### 4 Edit the `/tmp/temp_file` file using a text editor. Add the name of the new slave server to the list of servers. Then save and close the file.

### 5 Run the `makedbm` command with `temp_file` as the input file and `ypservers` as the output file.

```
# makedbm /tmp/temp_file ypservers
```

`makedbm` then converts `ypservers` back into `ndbm` format.

### 6 Verify that the `ypservers` map is correct (since there is no ASCII file for `ypservers`) by typing the following on the slave.

```
slave3# makedbm -u ypservers
```

The `makedbm` command displays each entry in `ypservers` on your screen.

---

**Note** – If a machine name is not in `ypservers`, it will not receive updates to the map files because `yppush` consults this map for the list of slave servers.

---

**7 On the new NIS slave, become superuser or assume an equivalent role.**

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control \(Tasks\),”](#) in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

**8 Set up the new slave server's NIS domain directory.**

Copy the NIS map set from the master server, then start the NIS client. When running the `ypinit` command, follow the prompts and list the NIS servers in order of preference.

```
slave3# cd /var/yp
slave3# ypinit -c
slave3# svcadm enable network/nis/client
```

**9 Initialize this machine as a slave.**

```
slave3# /usr/sbin/ypinit -s ypmaster
```

where `ypmaster` is the machine name of the existing NIS master server.

**10 Stop the machine running as an NIS client.**

```
# svcadm disable network/nis/client
```

**11 Start NIS slave service.**

```
# svcadm enable network/nis/server
```

## Using NIS With C2 Security

If the `$PWDIR/security/passwd.adjunct` file is present, C2 security is started automatically. (`$PWDIR` is defined in `/var/yp/Makefile`.) The C2 security mode uses the `passwd.adjunct` file to create the `passwd.adjunct` NIS map. In this implementation, NIS allows you to use both the `passwd.adjunct` file and `shadow` file to manage security. The `passwd.adjunct` file is processed only when you type the following.

```
# make passwd.adjunct
```

The `make passwd` command processes the `passwd` map only, not the `passwd.adjunct` map when you run `make` manually in the C2 security mode.

## Binding to a Specific NIS Server

Use the following steps to bind to an NIS server that you specify. For more information, see the [ypinit\(1M\)](#), [ypstart\(1M\)](#), and [svcadm\(1M\)](#) man pages.

1. Add the hostname of the NIS server and its IP address to the `/etc/hosts` file.
2. Run the `domainname` command to populate the `/etc/defaultdomain` file.

```
# /usr/bin/domainname name-of-NIS-domain
```

3. Prompt for the NIS server host name.

```
# /usr/sbin/ypinit -c
Server name:      Type the NIS server hostname
```

4. Restart the NIS services by performing one of the following steps.

- For the services to persist across reboots, run the `svcadm` command:

```
# svcadm enable -r svc:/network/nis/client
```

- For the services to persist until reboot only, run the `ypstop` and `ypstart` commands:

```
# /usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypstop
# /usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypstart
```

## Changing a Machine's NIS Domain

To change the NIS domain name of a machine, do the following.

### ▼ How to Change a Machine's NIS Domain Name

- 1 **Become superuser or assume an equivalent role.**

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control \(Tasks\),”](#) in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

- 2 **Edit the machine's `/etc/defaultdomain` file, exchanging its present contents with the new domain name for the machine.**

For example, if the current domain name is `sales.doc.com`, you might change it to `research.doc.com`.

- 3 **Run `domainname 'cat /etc/defaultdomain'`**

- 4 **Set the machine up as an NIS client, slave, or master server.**

See for [Chapter 5, “Setting Up and Configuring NIS Service,”](#) for details.

## Using NIS in Conjunction With DNS

Typically, NIS clients are configured with the `nsswitch.conf` file to use only NIS for machine name and address lookups. If this type of lookup fails, an NIS server can forward these lookups to DNS.

### ▼ How to Configure Machine Name and Address Lookup Through NIS and DNS

#### 1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role.

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control \(Tasks\),”](#) in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

#### 2 The two map files, `hosts.byname` and `hosts.byaddr` must include the `YP_INTERDOMAIN` key. To test this key, edit the `Makefile` and modify the following lines.

```
#B=-b
B=
to
```

```
B=-b
#B=
```

`makedbm` will now start with the `-b` flag when it makes the maps, and the `YP_INTERDOMAIN` key will be inserted into the `ndbm` files.

#### 3 Run the `make` command to rebuild maps.

```
# /usr/ccs/bin/make hosts
```

#### 4 Check that all the NIS server's `/etc/resolv.conf` files point to valid nameservers.

---

**Note** – If you have NIS servers that are not running Solaris, Release 2, make sure `YP_INTERDOMAIN` exists in the hosts maps.

---

#### 5 To enable DNS forwarding, restart each server.

```
# svcadm restart network/nis/server:<instance>
```

In this implementation of NIS, `ypserv` automatically starts with the `-d` option to forward requests to DNS.

## Dealing with Mixed NIS Domains

If the master and slave servers are not both running Solaris 2, refer to the following table for how to avoid potential problems. The notation “4.0.3+” refers to that and later releases of the Solaris OS. `makedbm -b` is a reference to the “B” variable in the `Makefile`.

TABLE 6-1 NIS/DNS in Heterogeneous NIS Domains

Slave	Master		
	4.0.3+	Solaris NIS	
4.0.3+	Master: <code>makedbm -b</code>	Master: <code>makedbm -b</code>	Master: <code>ypserv -d</code>
	Slave: <code>ypxfr</code>	Slave: <code>ypxfr -b</code>	Slave: <code>ypxfr -b</code>
Solaris NIS	Master: <code>makedbm -b</code>	Master: <code>makedbm -b</code>	Master: <code>ypserv -d</code>
	Slave: <code>ypxfr</code>	Slave: <code>ypxfr</code>	Slave: <code>ypxfr</code> with <code>resolv.conf</code> or <code>ypxfr -b</code>

## Turning Off NIS Services

If `ypserv` on the NIS master is disabled, you can no longer update any of the NIS maps.

- To disable NIS on a client, type the following.  

```
# svcadm disable network/nis/client
```
- To disable NIS on a specific slave or master server, type the following on the server.  

```
# svcadm disable network/nis/server
```



# NIS Troubleshooting

---

This chapter explains how to resolve problems encountered on networks running NIS. It covers problems seen on an NIS client and those seen on an NIS server.

Before trying to debug an NIS server or client, review [Chapter 4, “Network Information Service \(NIS\) \(Overview\)”](#), which explains the NIS environment. Then look for the subheading in this section that best describes your problem.

---

**Note** – The NIS service is managed by the Service Management Facility. Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or restarting, can be performed by using the `svcadm` command. See “[NIS and the Service Management Facility](#)” on page 84 for more information about using SMF with NIS. For an overview of SMF, refer to [Chapter 17, “Managing Services \(Overview\)”](#), in *System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*. Also refer to the [svcadm\(1M\)](#) and [svcs\(1\)](#) man pages for more details.

NIS services can also be started and stopped by using the `ypstart` and `ypstop` commands. See the [ypstart\(1M\)](#) and [ypstop\(1M\)](#) man pages for more information.

---

## NIS Binding Problems

### Symptoms

Common symptoms of NIS binding problems include the following.

- Messages saying that `ypbind` can't find or communicate with a server
- Messages saying that server not responding
- Messages saying that NIS is unavailable
- Commands on a client limp along in background mode or function much slower than normal

- Commands on a client hang. Sometimes commands hang even though the system as a whole seems fine and you can run new commands
- Commands on a client crash with obscure messages, or no message at all

## NIS Problems Affecting One Client

If only one or two clients are experiencing symptoms that indicate NIS binding difficulty, the problems probably are on those clients. If many NIS clients are failing to bind properly, the problem probably exists on one or more of the NIS servers. See [“NIS Problems Affecting Many Clients” on page 123](#).

### ypbind **Not Running on Client**

One client has problems, but other clients on the same subnet are operating normally. On the problem client, run `ls -l` on a directory, such as `/usr`, that contains files owned by many users, including some not in the client `/etc/passwd` file. If the resulting display lists file owners who are not in the local `/etc/passwd` as numbers, rather than names, this indicates that NIS service is not working on the client.

These symptoms usually mean that the client `ypbind` process is not running. Verify whether the NIS client service is running.

```
client# svcs network/nis/client
STATE          STIME      FMRI
disabled       Sep_01    svc:/network/nis/client:default
```

If the client is disabled, log in as superuser, or assume an equivalent role, and start the NIS client service.

```
client# svcadm enable network/nis/client
```

### Missing or Incorrect Domain Name

One client has problems, the other clients are operating normally, but `ypbind` is running on the problem client. The client might have an incorrectly set domain.

On the client, run the `domainname` command to see which domain name is set.

```
client7# domainname neverland.com
```

Compare the output with the actual domain name in `/var/yp` on the NIS master server. The actual NIS domain is shown as a subdirectory in the `/var/yp` directory.

```
Client7# ls /var/yp...
-rwxr-xr-x 1 root Makefile
```



```
drwxr-xr-x 2 root binding
drwx----- 2 root doc.com ...
```

If the domain name returned by running `domainname` on a machine is not the same as the server domain name listed as a directory in `/var/yp`, the domain name specified in the machine's `/etc/defaultdomain` file is incorrect. Log in as superuser or assume an equivalent role, and correct the client's domain name in the machine's `/etc/defaultdomain` file. This assures that the domain name is correct every time the machine boots. Now reboot the machine.

---

**Note** – The domain name is case-sensitive.

---

## Client Not Bound to Server

If your domain name is set correctly, `ypbind` is running, and commands still hang, then make sure that the client is bound to a server by running the `ypwhich` command. If you have just started `ypbind`, then run `ypwhich` several times (typically, the first one reports that the domain is not bound and the second succeeds normally).

## No Server Available

If your domain name is set correctly, `ypbind` is running, and you get messages indicating that the client cannot communicate with a server, this might indicate a number of different problems:

- Does the client have a `/var/yp/binding/domainname/ypservers` file containing a list of servers to bind to? If not, run `ypinit -c` and specify in order of preference the servers that this client should bind to.
- If the client does have a `/var/yp/binding/domainname/ypservers` file, are there enough servers listed in it if one or two become unavailable? If not, add additional servers to the list by running `ypinit -c`.
- Do the servers listed in a client's `ypservers` file have entries in the `/etc/hosts` file? If not, add the servers to the NIS maps `hosts` input file and rebuild your maps by running `ypinit -c` or `ypinit -s` as described [“Working With NIS Maps” on page 101](#).
- Is the `/etc/nsswitch.conf` file set up to consult the machine's local `hosts` file in addition to NIS? See [Chapter 2, “The Name Service Switch \(Overview\)”](#) for more information on the switch.
- Is the `/etc/nsswitch.conf` file set up to consult `files` first for `services` and `rpc`? See [Chapter 2, “The Name Service Switch \(Overview\)”](#) for more information on the switch.

## ypwhich Displays Are Inconsistent

When you use `ypwhich` several times on the same client, the resulting display varies because the NIS server changes. This is normal. The binding of the NIS client to the NIS server changes over time when the network or the NIS servers are busy. Whenever possible, the network becomes

stable at a point where all clients get acceptable response time from the NIS servers. As long as your client machine gets NIS service, it does not matter where the service comes from. For example, an NIS server machine can get its own NIS services from another NIS server on the network.

## When Server Binding is Not Possible

In extreme cases where local server binding is not possible, use of the `ypset` command can temporarily allow binding to another server, if available, on another network or subnet. However, in order to use the `-ypset` option, `ypbind` must be started with either the `-ypset` or `-ypsetme` options. For more information, see the [ypbind\(1M\)](#) man page.

```
# /usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypbind -ypset
```

For another method, see “[Binding to a Specific NIS Server](#)” on page 115.

---

**Note** – For security reasons, the use of the `-ypset` and `-ypsetme` options should be limited to debugging purposes under controlled circumstances. Use of the `-ypset` and `-ypsetme` options can result in serious security breaches because while the daemons are running, anyone can alter server bindings causing trouble for others and permitting unauthorized access to sensitive data. If you must start `ypbind` with these options, once you have fixed the problem you should kill `ypbind` and restart it again without those options.

To restart `ypbind`, use the service management facility (SMF):

```
# svcadm enable -r svc:/network/nis/client:default
```

---

## ypbind Crashes

If `ypbind` crashes almost immediately each time it is started, look for a problem in some other part of the system. Check for the presence of the `rpcbind` daemon by typing the following.

```
% ps -e | grep rpcbind
```

If `rpcbind` is not present or does not stay up or behaves strangely, consult your RPC documentation.

You might be able to communicate with `rpcbind` on the problematic client from a machine operating normally. From the functioning machine, type the following.

```
% rpcinfo client
```

If `rpcbind` on the problematic machine is fine, `rpcinfo` produces the following output.

```
program    version    netid      address    service    owner
...
100007     2         udp       0.0.0.0.2.219  ypbind    superuser
```

```

100007 1 udp 0.0.0.0.2.219 ypbind superuser
100007 1 tcp 0.0.0.0.2.220 ypbind superuser
100007 2 tcp 0.0.0.0.128.4 ypbind superuser
100007 2 ticotsord \000\000\020H ypbind superuser
100007 2 ticots \000\000\020K ypbind superuser
...

```

Your machine will have different addresses. If the addresses are not displayed, `ypbind` has been unable to register its services. Reboot the machine and run `rpcinfo` again. If the `ypbind` processes are there and they change each time you try to restart the NIS service, reboot the system, even if the `rpcbind` daemon is running.

## NIS Problems Affecting Many Clients

If only one or two clients are experiencing symptoms that indicate NIS binding difficulty, the problems probably are on those clients. See [“NIS Problems Affecting One Client” on page 120](#). If many NIS clients are failing to bind properly, the problem probably exists on one or more of the NIS servers.

### `rpc.yppasswdd` Considers a Non-Restricted Shell That Begins With `r` to be Restricted

1. Create `/etc/default/yppasswdd` that contains a special string:  
`check_restricted_shell_name=1`.
2. If the `check_restricted_shell_name=1` string is commented out, the `r` check will not occur.

## Network or Servers Are Overloaded

NIS can hang if the network or NIS servers are so overloaded that `yplib` cannot get a response back to the client `ypbind` process within the time-out period.

Under these circumstances, every client on the network experiences the same or similar problems. In most cases, the condition is temporary. The messages usually go away when the NIS server reboots and restarts `yplib`, or when the load on the NIS servers or network itself decreases.

## Server Malfunction

Make sure the servers are up and running. If you are not physically near the servers, use the `ping` command.

## NIS Daemons Not Running

If the servers are up and running, try to find a client machine behaving normally, and run the `ypwhich` command. If `ypwhich` does not respond, kill it. Then log in as root on the NIS server and check if the NIS process is running by entering the following.

```
# ps -e | grep yp
```

---

**Note** – Do not use the `-f` option with `ps` because this option attempts to translate user IDs to names, which causes more naming service lookups that might not succeed.

---

If neither the NIS server (`ypserv`) nor the NIS client (`ypbind`) daemons are running, restart them by typing one of the following.

```
# svcadm restart network/nis/server
or
# /usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypstop
# /usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypstart
```

If both the `ypserv` and `ypbind` processes are running on the NIS server, then run `ypwhich`. If `ypwhich` does not respond, `ypserv` has probably hung and should be restarted. While logged in as root on the server, restart the NIS service by typing one of the following.

```
# svcadm restart network/nis/server
or
# /usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypstop
# /usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypstart
```

## Servers Have Different Versions of an NIS Map

Because NIS propagates maps among servers, occasionally you might find different versions of the same map on various NIS servers on the network. This version discrepancy is normal and acceptable if the differences do not last for more than a short time.

The most common cause of map discrepancy is that something is preventing normal map propagation. For example, an NIS server or router between NIS servers is down. When all NIS servers and the routers between them are running, `ypxfr` should succeed.

If the servers and routers are functioning properly, check the following:

- Log `ypxfr` output (see “[Logging ypxfr Output](#)” on page 125).
- Check the control files (see “[Check the crontab File and ypxfr Shell Script](#)” on page 125).
- Check the `ypservers` map on the master. See “[Check the ypservers Map](#)” on page 125.

---

## Logging ypxfr Output

If a particular slave server has problems updating maps, log in to that server and run `ypxfr` interactively. If `ypxfr` fails, it tells you why it failed, and you can fix the problem. If `ypxfr` succeeds, but you suspect it has occasionally failed, create a log file to enable logging of messages. To create a log file, enter the following on the slave.

```
ypslave# cd /var/yp
ypslave# touch ypxfr.log
```

This creates a `ypxfr.log` file that saves all output from `ypxfr`.

The output resembles the output `ypxfr` displays when run interactively, but each line in the log file is time stamped. (You might see unusual ordering in the time-stamps. That is okay – the time-stamp tells you when `ypxfr` started to run. If copies of `ypxfr` ran simultaneously but their work took differing amounts of time, they might actually write their summary status line to the log files in an order different from that which they were invoked.) Any pattern of intermittent failure shows up in the log.

---

**Note** – When you have fixed the problem, turn off logging by removing the log file. If you forget to remove it, it continues to grow without limit.

---

## Check the crontab File and ypxfr Shell Script

Inspect the root crontab file, and check the `ypxfr` shell script it invokes. Typographical errors in these files can cause propagation problems. Failures to refer to a shell script within the `/var/spool/cron/crontabs/root` file, or failures to refer to a map within any shell script can also cause errors.

## Check the ypservers Map

Also, make sure that the NIS slave server is listed in the `ypservers` map on the master server for the domain. If it is not, the slave server still operates perfectly as a server, but `yppush` does not propagate map changes to the slave server.

## Work Around

If the NIS slave server problem is not obvious, you can work around it while you debug using `rcp` or `ftp` to copy a recent version of the inconsistent map from any healthy NIS server. The following shows how to transfer the problem map.

```
ypslave# rcp ypmaster:/var/yp/mydomain/map.\* /var/yp/mydomain
```

The `*` character has been escaped in the command line, so that it will be expanded on `ypmaster`, instead of locally on `ypslave`.

## ypserv Crashes

When the `ypserv` process crashes almost immediately, and does not stay up even with repeated activations, the debug process is virtually identical to that described in [“ypbind Crashes” on page 122](#). Check for the existence of the `rpcbind` daemon as follows.

```
ypserver% ps -e | grep rpcbind
```

Reboot the server if you do not find the daemon. Otherwise, if the daemon is running, type the following and look for similar output.

```
% rpcinfo -p ypserv
```

```
% program    vers    proto    port    service
100000        4      tcp     111     portmapper
100000        3      tcp     111     portmapper
100068        2      udp    32813   cmsd
...
100007        1      tcp    34900   ypbind
100004        2      udp     731     ypserv
100004        1      udp     731     ypserv
100004        1      tcp     732     ypserv
100004        2      tcp    32772   ypserv
```

Your machine might have different port numbers. The four entries representing the `ypserv` process are the following.

```
100004        2      udp     731     ypserv
100004        1      udp     731     ypserv
100004        1      tcp     732     ypserv
100004        2      tcp    32772   ypserv
```

If there are no entries, and `ypserv` is unable to register its services with `rpcbind`, reboot the machine. If there are entries, de-register the service from `rpcbind` before restarting `ypserv`. To de-register the service from `rpcbind`, on the server type the following.

```
# rpcinfo -d number 1
# rpcinfo -d number 2
```

where *number* is the ID number reported by `rpcinfo` (100004, in the example above).



## PART IV

# LDAP Naming Services Setup and Administration

This part provides an overview of the LDAP naming services. Additionally, it covers the setup, configuration, administration, and troubleshooting of LDAP naming services in the Solaris OS, with a focus on the use of Sun Java™ System Directory Server (formerly Sun ONE Directory Server).





# Introduction to LDAP Naming Services (Overview/Reference)

---

The LDAP chapters describe how to set up a Solaris LDAP naming services client to work with Sun Java System Directory Server (formerly Sun ONE Directory Server). However, while using the Sun Java System Directory Server is recommended, it is not required. A brief description of generic directory server requirements appears in [Chapter 14, “LDAP General Reference \(Reference\)”](#).

---

**Note** – A directory server is not necessarily an LDAP server. However, in the context of these chapters, the term “directory server” is synonymous with “LDAP server.”

---

## Audience Assumptions

The LDAP naming services chapters are written for system administrators who already have a working knowledge of LDAP. Following is a partial list of concepts with which you must be very familiar. Otherwise, you might have difficulty using this guide to deploy LDAP naming services in the Solaris system.

- LDAP Information Model (entries, object classes, attributes, types, values)
- LDAP Naming Model (Directory Information Tree (DIT) structure)
- LDAP Functional Model (search parameters: base object (DN), scope, size limit, time limit, filters (browsing indexes for the Sun Java System Directory Server), attribute list)
- LDAP Security Model (authentication methods, access control models)
- Overall planning and design of an LDAP directory service, including how to plan the data and how to design the DIT, topology, replication, and security

## Suggested Background Reading

To learn more about any of the preceding concepts or to study LDAP and the deployment of directory services in general, refer to the following sources:

- *Understanding and Deploying LDAP Directory Services* by Timothy A. Howes, Ph.D. and Mark C. Smith  
In addition to providing a thorough treatment of LDAP directory services, this book includes useful case studies on deploying LDAP. Examples of deployments include a large university, a large multinational enterprise, and an enterprise with an extranet.
- Sun Java System Directory Server *Deployment Guide*, which is included with the Sun Java Enterprise System documentation  
This guide provides a foundation for planning your directory, including directory design, schema design, the directory tree, topology, replication, and security. The last chapter provides sample deployment scenarios to help you plan both simple, smaller-scale deployments and complex worldwide deployments.
- Sun Java System Directory Server *Administration Guide*, which is included with the Sun Java Enterprise System documentation

## Additional Prerequisite

If you need to install Sun Java System Directory Server, refer to the *Installation Guide* for the version of Sun Java System Directory Server that you are using.

## LDAP Naming Services Compared to Other Naming Services

The following table shows a comparison between the DNS, NIS, and LDAP naming services.

	DNS	NIS	LDAP
<b>Namespace</b>	Hierarchical	Flat	Hierarchical
<b>Data Storage</b>	Files/resource records	2 column maps	Directories (varied) Indexed database
<b>Servers</b>	Master/slave	Master/slave	Master/replica Multi master replica
<b>Security</b>	None	None (root or nothing)	SSL, varied
<b>Transport</b>	TCP/IP	RPC	TCP/IP

	DNS	NIS	LDAP
<b>Scale</b>	Global	LAN	Global

## Advantages of LDAP Naming Services

- LDAP enables you to consolidate information by replacing application-specific databases, which reduces the number of distinct databases to be managed.
- LDAP allows data to be shared by different naming services.
- LDAP provides a central repository for data.
- LDAP allows for more frequent data synchronization between masters and replicas.
- LDAP is multi-platform and multi-vendor compatible.

## Restrictions of LDAP Naming Services

Following are some restrictions associated with LDAP naming services:

- Clients prior to Solaris 8 are not supported.
- An LDAP server cannot be its own client.
- Setting up and managing an LDAP naming services is more complex and requires careful planning.
- A NIS client and a Native LDAP client cannot co-exist on the same client machine.

---

**Note** – A directory server (an LDAP server) *cannot* be its own client. That is, you cannot configure the machine that is running the directory server software to become an LDAP naming services client.

---

## LDAP Naming Services Setup (Task Map)

Task	For Instructions
Confirm that patch is installed	
Plan the network model	<a href="#">“Planning the LDAP Network Model” on page 161</a>
Plan the DIT	<a href="#">Chapter 10, “Planning Requirements for LDAP Naming Services (Tasks)”</a>

---

Task	For Instructions
Set up replica servers	<a href="#">“LDAP and Replica Servers” on page 163</a>
Plan the security model	<a href="#">“Planning the LDAP Security Model” on page 164</a>
Choose client profiles and default attribute values	<a href="#">“Planning Client Profiles and Default Attribute Values for LDAP” on page 166</a>
Plan the data population	<a href="#">“Planning the LDAP Data Population” on page 166</a>
Configure Sun Java System Directory Server prior to using it with LDAP naming services	<i>Sun ONE Directory Server 5.2 (Solaris Edition)</i>
Set up Sun Java System Directory Server for use with LDAP naming clients	Chapter 11, <a href="#">“Setting Up Sun Java System Directory Server With LDAP Clients (Tasks)”</a>
Manage printer entries	<a href="#">“Managing Printer Entries” on page 180</a>
Initialize an LDAP client	<a href="#">“Initializing an LDAP Client” on page 189</a>
Initialize a client by using profiles	<a href="#">“Using Profiles to Initialize a Client” on page 190</a>
Initialize a client manually	<a href="#">“Initializing a Client Manually” on page 194</a>
Uninitialize a client	<a href="#">“Uninitializing a Client” on page 195</a>
Use service search descriptors to modify client profiles	<a href="#">“Using Service Search Descriptors to Modify Client Access to Various Services” on page 172</a>
Retrieve naming service information	<a href="#">“Retrieving LDAP Naming Services Information” on page 199</a>
Customize a client environment	<a href="#">“Customizing the LDAP Client Environment” on page 200</a>

---

# LDAP Basic Components and Concepts (Overview)

---

This chapter covers the following topics.

- “LDAP Data Interchange Format (LDIF)” on page 133
- “Using Fully Qualified Domain Names With LDAP” on page 137
- “Default Directory Information Tree (DIT)” on page 137
- “Default LDAP Schema” on page 138
- “Service Search Descriptors (SSDs) and Schema Mapping” on page 138
- “LDAP Client Profiles” on page 141
- “`ldap_cachemgr` Daemon” on page 143
- “LDAP Naming Services Security Model” on page 144

## LDAP Data Interchange Format (LDIF)

LDIF is a text-based format for describing directory service entities and their attributes. Using LDIF format you can move information from one directory to another with commands such as `ldapadd` and `ldapmodify`. The following are examples of LDIF format for each service. Use `ldaplist(1)` with the `-l` option to display the following information.

```
% ldaplist -l hosts myhost
```

```
hosts
```

```
dn: cn=myhost+ipHostNumber=7.7.7.115,ou=Hosts,dc=mydc,dc=mycom,dc=com
cn: myhost
iphostnumber: 7.7.7.115
objectclass: top
objectclass: device
objectclass: ipHost
description: host 1 - floor 1 - Lab a - building b
```

```
% ldaplist -l passwd user1
```

```
passwd
```

```
dn: uid=user1,ou=People,dc=mydc,dc=mycom,dc=com
uid: user1
cn: user1
userpassword: {crypt}duTx91g7PoNzE
uidnumber: 199995
gidnumber: 20
gecos: Joe Smith [New York]
homedirectory: /home/user1
loginshell: /bin/csh
objectclass: top
objectclass: shadowAccount
objectclass: account
objectclass: posixAccount
```

```
% ldaplist -l services name
```

```
services
```

```
dn: cn=name+ipServiceProtocol=udp,ou=Services,dc=mydc,dc=mycom,dc=com
cn: name
cn: nameserver
ipserviceprotocol: udp
ipserviceport: 42
objectclass: top
objectclass: ipService
```

```
% ldaplist -l group mygroup
```

```
group
```

```
dn: cn=mygroup,ou=Group,dc=mydc,dc=mycom,dc=com
cn: mygroup
gidnumber: 4441
memberuid: user1
memberuid: user2
memberuid: user3
userpassword: {crypt}duTx91g7PoNzE
objectclass: top
objectclass: posixGroup
```

```
% ldaplist -lnetgroup mynetgroup
```

```
netgroup
```

```
cn=mynetgroup,ou=netgroup,dc=central,dc=sun,dc=com objectclass=nisNetgroup
-objectclass: -top
```

```
-cn: -mynetgroup
-nisnetgrouptriple: -(user1..mydc.mycom.com,-,) nisnetgrouptriple=(user1.,-,)
-memberrnisnetgroup: -mylab
```

```
% ldaplist -l networks 200.20.20.0
```

```
networks
```

```
dn: ipNetworkNumber=200.20.20.0,ou=Networks,dc=mydc,dc=mycom,dc=com
cn: mynet-200-20-20
ipnetworknumber: 200.20.20.0
objectclass: top
objectclass: ipNetwork
description: my Lab Network
ipnetmasknumber: 255.255.255.0
```

```
% ldaplist -l netmasks 201.20.20.0
```

```
netmasks
```

```
dn: ipNetworkNumber=201.20.20.0,ou=Networks,dc=mydc,dc=mycom,dc=com
cn: net-201
ipnetworknumber: 201.20.20.0
objectclass: top
objectclass: ipNetwork
description: my net 201
ipnetmasknumber: 255.255.255.0
```

```
% ldaplist -l rpc ypserv
```

```
rpc
```

```
dn: cn=ypserv,ou=Rpc,dc=mydc,dc=mycom,dc=com
cn: ypserv
cn: ypprog
oncrpcnumber: 100004
objectclass: top
objectclass: oncRpc
```

```
% ldaplist -l protocols tcp
```

```
protocols
```

```
dn: cn=tcp,ou=Protocols,dc=mydc,dc=mycom,dc=com
cn: tcp
ipprotocolnumber: 6
description: transmission control protocol
objectclass: top
objectclass: ipProtocol
```

```
% ldaplist -l bootparams myhost
```

```
bootparams
```

```
dn: cn=myhost,ou=Ethers,dc=mydc,dc=mycom,dc=com
bootparameter: root=boothost:/export/a/b/c/d/e
objectclass: top
objectclass: device
objectclass: bootableDevice
cn: myhost
```

```
% ldaplist -l ethers myhost
```

```
ethers
```

```
dn: cn=myhost,ou=Ethers,dc=mydc,dc=mycom,dc=com
macaddress: 8:1:21:71:31:c1
objectclass: top
objectclass: device
objectclass: ieee802Device
cn: myhost
```

```
% ldaplist -l publickey myhost
```

```
publickey
```

```
dn: cn=myhost+ipHostNumber=200.20.20.99,ou=Hosts,dc=mydc,dc=mycom,dc=com
cn: myhost
iphostnumber: 200.20.20.99
description: Joe Smith
nispublickey: 9cc01614d929848849add28d090acdaa1c78270aee969c9
nissecretkey: 999999998769c999c39e7a6ed4e7afd687d4b99908b4de99
objectclass: top
objectclass: NisKeyObject
objectclass: device
objectclass: ipHost
```

```
% ldaplist -l aliases myname
```

```
aliases
```

```
dn: mail=myname,ou=aliases,dc=mydc,dc=mycom,dc=com
cn: myname
mail: myname
objectclass: top
objectclass: mailgroup
mgrprfc822mailmember: my.name
```



## Using Fully Qualified Domain Names With LDAP

Unlike NIS clients, an LDAP client always returns a fully qualified domain name (FQDN) for a host name. The LDAP FQDN is similar to the FQDN returned by DNS. For example, suppose your domain name is the following:

```
west.example.net
```

Both `gethostbyname()` and `getnameinfo()` return the FQDN version when looking up the host name *server*:

```
server.west.example.net
```

Also, if you use interface-specific aliases such as `server-#`, a long list of fully qualified host names are returned. If you are using host names to share file systems or have other such checks, you must account for the checks. For example, if you assume non-FQDNs for local hosts and FQDNs only for remote DNS-resolved hosts, you must account for the difference. If you set up LDAP with a different domain name from DNS, the same host might end up with two different FQDNs, depending on the lookup source.

## Default Directory Information Tree (DIT)

By default, Solaris LDAP clients access the information assuming that the DIT has a given structure. For each domain supported by the LDAP server, there is a subtree with an assumed structure. This default structure, however, can be overridden by specifying Service Search Descriptors (SSDs). For a given domain, the default DIT will have a base container that holds a number of well known containers that hold entries for a specific information type. See the following table for the names of these subtrees. (This information can be found in RFC 2307 and others.)

TABLE 9-1 DIT Default Locations

Default Container	Information Type
ou=Ethers	bootparams(4), ethers(4)
ou=Group	group(4)
ou=Hosts	hosts(4), ipnodes(4), publickey for hosts
ou=Aliases	aliases(4)
ou=Netgroup	netgroup(4)
ou=Networks	networks(4), netmasks(4)

TABLE 9-1 DIT Default Locations (Continued)

Default Container	Information Type
ou=People	passwd(1), shadow(4), user_attr(4), audit_user(4), publickey for users
ou=printers	printers(4)
ou=Protocols	protocols(4)
ou=Rpc	rpc(4)
ou=Services	services(4)
ou=SolarisAuthAttr	auth_attr(4)
ou=SolarisProfAttr	prof_attr(4), exec_attr(4)
ou=projects	project
automountMap=auto_*	auto_*

## Default LDAP Schema

Schemas are definitions describing what types of information can be stored as entries in an LDAP directory. To support LDAP naming clients, the directory server's schema might need to be extended. Detailed information about IETF and Solaris specific schemas is included in [Chapter 14, “LDAP General Reference \(Reference\).”](#) The various RFCs can also be accessed on the IETF Web site <http://www.ietf.org>.

## Service Search Descriptors (SSDs) and Schema Mapping

---

**Note** – If you use schema mapping, you must do so in a very careful and consistent manner. Make sure the syntax of the mapped attribute is consistent with the attribute it is mapped to. In other words, make sure that single-valued attributes map to single-valued attributes, that the attribute syntaxes are in agreement, and that mapped object classes have the correct mandatory (possibly mapped) attributes.

---

As previously discussed, LDAP naming services expect, by default, the DIT to be structured in a certain way. If you want, you can instruct the Solaris LDAP naming service to search in other locations than the default locations in the DIT. Additionally, you can specify that different attributes and object classes be used in place of those specified by the default schema. For a list of default filters, see [“Default Filters Used by LDAP Naming Services” on page 238](#).

## Description of SSDs

The `serviceSearchDescriptor` attribute defines how and where an LDAP naming service client should search for information for a particular service. The `serviceSearchDescriptor` contains a service name, followed by one or more semicolon-separated base-scope-filter triples. These base-scope-filter triples are used to define searches only for the specific service and are searched in order. If multiple base-scope-filters are specified for a given service, then when that service looks for a particular entry, it will search in each base with the specified scope and filter.

---

**Note** – The default location is not searched for a service (database) with an SSD unless it is included in the SSD. Unpredictable behavior will result if multiple SSDs are given for a service.

---

In the following example, the Solaris LDAP naming service client performs a one-level search in `ou=west,dc=example,dc=com` followed by a one-level search in `ou=east,dc=example,dc=com` for the `passwd` service. To look up the `passwd` data for a user's username, the default LDAP filter (`&(objectClass=posixAccount)(uid=username)`) is used for each BaseDN.

```
serviceSearchDescriptor: passwd:ou=west,dc=example,dc=com;ou=east,
dc=example,dc=com
```

In the following example, the Solaris LDAP naming service client would perform a subtree search in `ou=west,dc=example,dc=com` for the `passwd` service. To look up the `passwd` data for user `username`, the subtree `ou=west,dc=example,dc=com` would be searched with the LDAP filter (`&(fulltimeEmployee=TRUE)(uid=username)`).

```
serviceSearchDescriptor: passwd:ou=west,dc=example,
dc=com?sub?fulltimeEmployee=TRUE
```

It is also possible to associate multiple containers with a particular service type. In the following example, the service search descriptor specifies searching for the password entries in three containers.

```
ou=myuser,dc=example,dc=com
ou=newuser,dc=example,dc=com
ou=extuser,dc=example,dc=com
```

Note that a trailing `'` in the example implies that the `defaultSearchBase` is appended to the relative base in the SSD.

```
defaultSearchBase: dc=example,dc=com
serviceSearchDescriptor: \
passwd:ou=myuser,;ou=newuser,;ou=extuser,dc=example,dc=com
```

## Attribute Map

The Solaris LDAP naming service allows one or more attribute names to be remapped for any of its services. (The Solaris LDAP client uses the well-known attributes documented in [Chapter 14, “LDAP General Reference \(Reference\)”](#).) If you map an attribute, you must be sure that the attribute has the same meaning and syntax as the original attribute. Note that mapping the `userPassword` attribute might cause problems.

There are a couple of reasons you might want to use schema mappings.

- You want to map attributes in an existing directory server
- If you have user names that differ only in case, you must map the `uid` attribute, which ignores case, to an attribute that does not ignore case

The format for this attribute is `service:attribute-name=mapped-attribute-name`.

If you want to map more than one attribute for a given service, you can define multiple `attributeMap` attributes.

In the following example, the `employeeName` and `home` attributes would be used whenever the `uid` and `homeDirectory` attributes would be used for the `passwd` service.

```
attributeMap: passwd:uid=employeeName
attributeMap: passwd:homeDirectory=home
```

There exists one special case where you can map the `passwd` service's `gecos` attribute to several attributes. The following is an example.

```
attributemap: gecos=cn sn title
```

This maps the `gecos` values to a space separated list of the `cn`, `sn`, and `title` attribute values.

## objectClass Map

The Solaris LDAP naming service allows object classes to be remapped for any of its services. If you want to map more than one object class for a given service, you can define multiple `objectClassMap` attributes. In the following example, the `myUnixAccount` object class is used whenever the `posixAccount` object class is used.

```
objectClassMap: passwd:posixAccount=myUnixAccount
```

## LDAP Client Profiles

To simplify Solaris client setup, and avoid having to reenter the same information for each and every client, create a single client profile on the directory server. This way, a single profile defines the configuration for all clients configured to use it. Any subsequent change to the profile attributes is propagated to the clients at a rate defined by the refresh interval.

These client profiles should be stored in a well-known location on the LDAP server. The root DN for the given domain must have an object class of `nisDomainObject` and a `nisDomain` attribute containing the client's domain. All profiles are located in the `ou=profile` container relative to this container. These profiles should be readable anonymously.

### Client Profile Attributes

The following table shows the Solaris LDAP client's profile attributes, which can be set automatically when you run `idsconfig`. See [“Initializing a Client Manually” on page 194](#) and the `idsconfig(1M)` man page for information on how to set a client profile manually.

TABLE 9-2 Client Profile Attributes

Attribute	Description
<code>cn</code>	The profile name. The attribute has no default value. The value must be specified.
<code>preferredServerList</code>	The host addresses of the preferred servers is a space separated list of server addresses. (Do not use host names.) The servers in this list are tried in order <i>before</i> those in <code>defaultServerList</code> until a successful connection is made. This has no default value. At least one server must be specified in either <code>preferredServerList</code> or <code>defaultServerList</code> .
<code>defaultServerList</code>	The host addresses of the default servers is a space separated list of server addresses. (Do not use host names.) After the servers in <code>preferredServerList</code> are tried, those default servers on the client's subnet are tried, followed by the remaining default servers, until a connection is made. At least one server must be specified in either <code>preferredServerList</code> or <code>defaultServerList</code> . The servers in this list are tried only after those on the preferred server list. This attribute has no default value.
<code>defaultSearchBase</code>	The DN relative to which to locate the well-known containers. There is no default for this value. However, this can be overridden for a given service by the <code>serviceSearchDescriptor</code> attribute.
<code>defaultSearchScope</code>	Defines the scope of a database search by a client. It can be overridden by the <code>serviceSearchDescriptor</code> attribute. The possible values are one or sub. The default value is a one level search.

TABLE 9-2 Client Profile Attributes (Continued)

Attribute	Description
<code>authenticationMethod</code>	Identifies the method of authentication used by the client. The default is none (anonymous). See “ <a href="#">Choosing Authentication Methods</a> ” on page 150 for more information.
<code>credentialLevel</code>	Identifies the type of credentials a client should use to authenticate. The choices are anonymous, proxy, or self (also known as per user). The default is anonymous.
<code>serviceSearchDescriptor</code>	Defines how and where a client should search for a naming database, for example, if the client should look in one or more points in the DIT. By default no SSDs are defined.
<code>serviceAuthenticationMethod</code>	Authentication method used by a client for the specified service. By default, no service authentication methods are defined. If a service does not have <code>serviceAuthenticationMethod</code> defined, it will default to the value of <code>authenticationMethod</code> .
<code>attributeMap</code>	Attribute mappings used by client. By default no <code>attributeMap</code> is defined.
<code>objectclassMap</code>	Object class mappings used by client. By default no <code>objectclassMap</code> is defined.
<code>searchTimeLimit</code>	Maximum time [in seconds] a client should allow for a search to complete before timing out. This does not affect the time the LDAP server will allow for a search to complete. The default value is 30 seconds.
<code>bindTimeLimit</code>	Maximum time in seconds a client should allow to bind with a server before timing out. Default value is 30 seconds.
<code>followReferrals</code>	Specifies whether a client should follow an LDAP referral. Possible values TRUE or FALSE. The default value is TRUE.
<code>profileTTL</code>	Time between refreshes of the client profile from the LDAP server by the <code>ldap_cachemgr(1M)</code> . Default is 43200 seconds or 12 hours. If given a value of 0, the profile will never be refreshed.

## Local Client Attributes

The following table lists the client attributes that can be set locally using `ldapclient`. See the `ldapclient(1M)` man page for more information.

TABLE 9-3 Local Client Attributes

Attribute	Description
adminDN	Specifies the administrator entry's distinguished name for the admin credential. If the value of the enableShadowUpdate switch is true on the client system, and credentialLevel has a value other than self, then adminDN must be specified.
adminPassword	Specifies the administrator entry's password for the admin credential. If the value of the enableShadowUpdate switch is true on the client system, and credentialLevel has a value other than self, then adminPassword must be defined.
domainName	Specifies the client's domain name (which becomes the default domain for the client system). This attribute has no default value and must be specified.
proxyDN	The proxy's distinguished name. If the client system is configured with credentialLevel of proxy, the proxyDN must be specified.
proxyPassword	The proxy's password. If the client system is configured with credentialLevel of proxy, proxyPassword must be defined.
certificatePath	The directory on the local file system containing the certificate databases. If a client system is configured with authenticationMethod or serviceAuthenticationMethod using TLS, then this attribute is used. The default value is /var/ldap.

---

**Note** – If the BaseDN in an SSD *contains a trailing comma*, it is treated as a relative value of the defaultSearchBase. The values of the defaultSearchBase are appended to the BaseDN before a search is performed.

---

## ldap\_cachemgr Daemon

ldap\_cachemgr is a daemon that runs on LDAP client machines. When you start the LDAP client, the ldap\_cachemgr daemon is invoked. The daemon performs the following key functions.

- Gains access to the configuration files, running as root
- Refreshes the client configuration information stored in the profiles on the server and pulls this data from the clients
- Maintains a sorted list of active LDAP servers to use
- Improves lookup efficiency by caching some common lookup requests submitted by various clients
- Improves the efficiency of host lookups

- If the `enableShadowUpdate` switch is set to `true`, gains access to the configured administrator credential and performs updates to the shadow data.

---

**Note** – `ldap_cachemgr` must be running at all times for LDAP naming services to work.

---

Refer to the [ldap\\_cachemgr\(1M\)](#) man page for detailed information.

## LDAP Naming Services Security Model

### Introduction

Solaris LDAP naming services can use the LDAP repository in two different ways. One is as a source of both a naming service and an authentication service. The other is strictly as the source of naming data. This section discusses the concepts of client identity, authentication methods, `pam_ldap` and `pam_unix` modules, and account management when the LDAP repository is used as both a naming service and authentication service. This section also discusses the use of LDAP naming services in conjunction with the Kerberos environment ([Part VI, “Kerberos Service,”](#) in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*) and `pam_krb5(5)` modules.



---

**Note** – Previously, if you enabled `pam_ldap` account management, all users needed to provide a login password for authentication any time they logged in to the system. Therefore, nonpassword-based logins using tools such as `rsh`, `rlogin`, or `ssh` would fail.

Now, however, `pam_ldap(5)`, when used with Sun Java System Directory Servers DS5.2p4 and newer releases, enables users to log in with `rsh`, `rlogin`, `rcp` and `ssh` without giving a password.

`pam_ldap(5)` is now modified to perform account management and retrieve the account status of users without authenticating to Directory Server as the user logging in. The new control to this on Directory Server is 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.9.5.8, which is enabled by default.

To modify this control for other than default, add Access Control Instructions (ACI) on Directory Server:

```
dn: oid=1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.9.5.8,cn=features,cn=config
objectClass: top
objectClass: directoryServerFeature
oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.9.5.8
cn:Password Policy Account Usable Request Control
aci: (targetattr != "aci")(version 3.0; acl "Account Usable";
      allow (read, search, compare, proxy)
      (groupdn = "ldap:///cn=Administrators,cn=config");)
creatorsName: cn=server,cn=plugins,cn=config
modifiersName: cn=server,cn=plugins,cn=config
```

---

**Note** – If you use Kerberos as your authentication system and integrate it with the LDAP naming system, you will be able to support a single sign on (SSO) environment in your enterprise through Kerberos. You will also be able to use that same identity system when querying LDAP naming data on a per-user or per-host basis.

---

To access the information in the LDAP repository, clients can first establish identity with the directory server. This identity can be either anonymous or as an object recognized by the LDAP server. Based on the client's identity and the server's access control information (ACI), the LDAP server will allow the client to read or write directory information. For more information on ACIs, consult the *Administration Guide* for the version of Sun Java System Directory Server that you are using.

If the client is connecting as anything other than anonymous for any given request, the client must prove its identity to the server using an authentication method supported by both the client and the server. Once the client has established its identity, it can then make the various LDAP requests.

When you use `pam_ldap` there is a distinction between how the naming service and the authentication service (`pam_ldap`) access the directory. The naming service reads various entries and their attributes from the directory based on predefined identity. The authentication service establishes whether the user has entered the correct password by using that user's name and password to authenticate to the LDAP server. See the [pam\\_ldap\(5\)](#) man page for more information about the authentication service.

When Kerberos is used to perform authentication, and when authentication in LDAP naming services is also enabled (as is required for per-user mode), Kerberos can provide dual functions. Kerberos authenticates to the server and the Kerberos identity for the principal (user or host) is used to authenticate to the directory. In this way, the same user identity that is used to authenticate to the system is also used to authenticate to the directory for lookups and updates. Administrators can use access control information (ACI) in the directory to limit the results out of the naming service if desired.

## Transport Layer Security (TLS)

---

**Note** – In order to use TLS for Solaris LDAP naming services, the directory server must use the default ports, 389 and 636, for LDAP and SSL, respectively. If your directory server does not use these ports, you cannot use TLS at this time.

---

TLS can be used to secure communication between an LDAP client and the directory server, providing both privacy and data integrity. The TLS protocol is a superset of the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol. Solaris LDAP naming services support TLS connections. Be aware that using SSL adds load to the directory server and the client.

You will need to set up your directory server for SSL. For more information about setting up Sun Java System Directory Server for SSL, see the Administration Guide for the version of Sun Java System Directory Server that you are using. You will also need to set up your LDAP client for SSL.

If using TLS, the necessary security databases must be installed. In particular, the certificate and key database files are needed. For example, if you adopt an older database format from Netscape Communicator, two files, `cert7.db` and `key3.db`, are required. Or if you use a new database format from Mozilla, three files, `cert8.db`, `key3.db`, and `secmod.db` are needed. The `cert7.db` or `cert8.db` file contains trusted certificates. The `key3.db` file contains the client's keys. Even if the LDAP naming service client does not use client keys, this file must be present. The `secmod.db` file contains the security modules such as the PKCS#11 module. This file is not required if the older format is used.

See “[Setting Up TLS Security](#)” on page 196 for more information.

---

## Assigning Client Credential Levels

LDAP naming services clients authenticate to the LDAP server according to a client's credential level. LDAP clients can be assigned four possible credential levels with which to authenticate to a directory server.

- `anonymous`
- `proxy`
- `proxy anonymous`
- `self` (called per user in this document)

### *Anonymous*

If you use `anonymous` access, you can access only the data that is available to everyone. In `anonymous` mode, an LDAP BIND operation does not take place. Also, you should consider the security implications. Allowing `anonymous` access for certain parts of the directory implies that anyone with access to the directory has read access. If you use an `anonymous` credential level, you need to allow read access to all the LDAP naming entries and attributes.



---

**Caution** – Allowing `anonymous` write to a directory should never be done, as anyone could change information in the DIT to which they have write access, including another user's password, or their own identity.

---

---

**Note** – Sun Java System Directory Server allows you to restrict access based on IP addresses, DNS name, authentication method, and time-of-day. You might want to limit access with further restrictions. For more information, see “Managing Access Control” in the *Administration Guide* for the version of Sun Java System Directory Server that you are using.

---

### *Proxy*

The client authenticates or binds to the directory using a single proxy account. This proxy account can be any entry that is allowed to bind to the directory. This proxy account needs sufficient access to perform the naming service functions on the LDAP server. The proxy account is a shared-per-system resource. That is, each user logged in to a system using proxy access, including the root user, sees the same results as all other users on that system. You need to configure the `proxyDN` and `proxyPassword` on every client using the `proxy` credential level. The encrypted `proxyPassword` is stored locally on the client. You can set up different proxies for different groups of clients. For example, you can configure a proxy for all the sales clients to access both the company-wide-accessible and sales directories, while preventing sales clients from accessing human resource directories with payroll information. Or, in the most extreme cases, you can either assign different proxies to each client or assign just one proxy to all clients. A typical LDAP deployment would probably lie between the two extremes. Consider the

choices carefully. Too few proxy agents might limit your ability to control user access to resources. However, having too many proxies complicates the setup and maintenance of the system. You need to grant the appropriate rights to the proxy user, depending on your environment. See “[Credential Storage](#)” on page 149 for information on how to determine which authentication method makes the most sense for your configuration.

If the password changes for a proxy user, you need to update it on every client that uses that proxy user. If you use password aging on LDAP accounts, be sure to turn it off for proxy users.

---

**Note** – Be aware that the proxy credential level applies to all users and processes on any given system. If two users need to use different naming policies, they must use different machines, or they must use the per-user authentication model.

---

In addition, if clients are using a proxy credential to authenticate, the proxyDN must have the same proxyPassword on all of the servers.

#### *Proxy anonymous*

Proxy anonymous is a multi-valued entry, in that more than one credential level is defined. A client assigned the proxy anonymous level will first attempt to authenticate with its proxy identity. If the client is unable to authenticate as the proxy user for whatever reason (user lockout, password expired, for example), then the client will use anonymous access. This might lead to a different level of service, depending on how the directory is configured.

#### *Per User*

Per-user (self) authentication uses the Kerberos identity (principal) to perform a lookup for each user or each system when authenticating to the directory server. With per-user authentication, the system administrator can use access control instructions (ACI's), access control lists (ACL's), roles, groups or other directory access control mechanisms to grant or deny access to specific naming service data for specific users or systems.

---

**Note** – When configuring per-user mode, the configuration value to enable this mode is “self,” which denotes per-user mode.

---

To use the per-user authentication model, the Kerberos single sign-on service must be deployed. In addition, the one or more directory servers used in the deployment must support SASL and the SASL/GSSAPI authentication mechanism. Because Kerberos expects to use files and DNS for host name lookups, instead of LDAP, DNS should be deployed in this environment. Also, to use per-user authentication, ns cd must be enabled. The ns cd daemon is not an optional component in this configuration.

## enableShadowUpdate Switch

If the `enableShadowUpdate` switch is set to `true` on the client, the admin credentials will be used to update the shadow data. Shadow data is stored in the `shadowAccount` object class on the directory server. Admin credentials are defined by the values of the `adminDN` and `adminPassword` attributes, as described in “[Local Client Attributes](#)” on page 142. These admin credentials are not used for any other purpose.

Admin credentials have properties similar to Proxy credentials. The exception is that for admin credentials, the user must have all privileges for the zone or have an effective UID of `root` to read or update the shadow data. Admin credentials can be assigned to any entry that is allowed to bind to the directory. However, do *not* use the same directory manager identity (`cn=Directory Manager`) of the LDAP server.

This entry with admin credentials must have sufficient access to read and write the shadow data in the directory. Because the entry is a shared-per-system resource, the `adminDN` and `adminPassword` attributes must be configured on every client. The encrypted `adminPassword` is stored locally on the client. The password uses the same authentication methods that are configured for the client. The admin credentials are used by all users and processes on a given system to read and update the shadow data.

## Credential Storage

If you configure a client to use a proxy identity, the client saves its `proxyDN` and `proxyPassword` in `/var/ldap/ldap_client_cred`. For the sake of increased security, this file is restricted to root access only, and the value of `proxyPassword` is encrypted. While past LDAP implementations have stored proxy credentials in a client's profile, Solaris 9 LDAP naming services do not. Any proxy credentials set using `ldapclient` during initialization are stored locally. This results in improved security surrounding a proxy's DN and password information. See [Chapter 12, “Setting Up LDAP Clients \(Tasks\)”](#), for more information on setting up client profiles.

Similarly, if you configure a client to enable shadow data updates, and the client credential level is not `self`, the client saves its `adminDN` and `adminPassword` attributes locally in the `/var/ldap/ldap_client_cred` file. The value of `adminPassword` is also encrypted and is used only by the `ldap_cachemgr` daemon process.

If you configure a client to use per-user authentication, the Kerberos identity and Kerberos ticket information for each principal (each user or host) are used during authentication. In this environment the directory server maps the Kerberos principal to a DN and the Kerberos credentials are used to authenticate to that DN. The directory server can then use its access control instruction (ACI) mechanisms to allow or deny access to naming service data as necessary. In this situation, Kerberos ticket information is used to authenticate to the directory server and the system does not store authentication DNs or passwords on the system. Therefore, for this type of configuration, you do not need to specify the `adminDN` and `adminPassword` attributes when the client is initialized with the `ldapclient` command.

## Choosing Authentication Methods

When you assign the proxy or proxy-anonymous credential level to a client, you also need to select a method by which the proxy authenticates to the directory server. By default, the authentication method is none, which implies anonymous access. The authentication method may also have a transport security option associated with it.

The authentication method, like the credential level, may be multivalued. For example, in the client profile you could specify that the client first tries to bind using the simple method secured by TLS. If unsuccessful, the client would try to bind with the sasl/digest-MD5 method. The authenticationMethod would then be `tls:simple;sasl/digest-MD5`.

LDAP naming services support some Simple Authentication and Security Layer (SASL) mechanisms. These mechanisms allow for a secure password exchange without requiring TLS. However, these mechanisms do not provide data integrity or privacy. See RFC 2222 for information on SASL.

The following authentication mechanisms are supported.

- none

The client does not authenticate to the directory. This is equivalent to the anonymous credential level.

- simple

If the client system uses the simple authentication method, it binds to the server by sending the user's password in the clear. The password is thus subject to snooping unless the session is protected by IPsec. The primary advantages of using the simple authentication method are that all directory servers support it and that it is easy to set up.

- sasl/digest-MD5

The client's password is protected during authentication, but the session is not encrypted. Some directory servers, including Sun Java System Directory Server, also support the sasl/digest-MD5 authentication method. The primary advantage of digest-MD5 is that the password does not go over the wire in the clear during authentication and therefore is more secure than the simple authentication method. See RFC 2831 for information on digest-MD5. digest-MD5 is considered an improvement over cram-MD5 for its improved security.

When using sasl/digest-MD5, the authentication is secure, but the session is not protected.

---

**Note** – If you are using Sun Java System Directory Server, the password *must be stored in the clear* in the directory.

---

- sasl/cram-MD5

In this case, the LDAP session is not encrypted, but the client's password is protected during authentication, as authentication is performed by using `sasl/cram-MD5`.

See RFC 2195 for information on the `cram-MD5` authentication method. `cram-MD5` is only supported by some directory servers. For instance, Sun Java System Directory Server does not support `cram-MD5`.

- `sasl/GSSAPI`

This authentication method is used in conjunction with the self credential mode to enable per-user lookups. A per-user `nscd` assigned to use the client's credentials binds to the directory server using the `sasl/GSSAPI` method and the client's Kerberos credentials. Access can be controlled in the directory server on a per-user basis.

- `tls:simple`

The client binds using the `simple` method and the session is encrypted. The password is protected.

- `tls:sasl/cram-MD5`

The LDAP session is encrypted and the client authenticates to the directory server using `sasl/cram-MD5`.

- `tls:sasl/digest-MD5`

The LDAP session is encrypted and the client authenticates to the directory server using `sasl/digest-MD5`.



**Caution** – Sun Java System Directory Server requires passwords to be stored in the clear in order to use `digest-MD5`. If the authentication method is set to `sasl/digest-MD5` or `tls:sasl/digest-MD5`, then the passwords for the proxy user will need to be stored in the clear. Be especially careful that the `userPassword` attribute has the proper ACIs if it is stored in the clear, so that it is not readable.

The following table summarizes the various authentication methods and their respective characteristics.

TABLE 9-4 Authentication Methods

	Bind	Password on wire	Password on Sun Java System Directory Server	Session
<code>none</code>	No	N/A	N/A	No encryption
<code>simple</code>	Yes	Clear	Any	No encryption
<code>sasl/digest-MD5</code>	Yes	Encryption	Clear	No encryption
<code>sasl/cram-MD5</code>	Yes	Encryption	N/A	No encryption

TABLE 9-4 Authentication Methods (Continued)

	Bind	Password on wire	Password on Sun Java System Directory Server	Session
sasl/GSSAPI	Yes	Kerberos	Kerberos	Encryption
tls:simple	Yes	Encryption	Any	Encryption
tls:sasl/cram-MD5	Yes	Encryption	N/A	Encryption
tls:sasl/digest-MD5	Yes	Encryption	Clear	Encryption

## Authentication and Services

The authentication method can be specified for a given service in the `serviceAuthenticationMethod` attribute. The following services currently support this.

- `passwd-cmd`  
This service is used by `passwd(1)` to change the login password and password attributes.
- `keyserv`  
This service is used by the `chkey(1)` and `newkey(1M)` utilities to create and change a user's Diffie-Hellman key pair.
- `pam_ldap`  
This service is used for authenticating users with `pam_ldap(5)`.  
`pam_ldap` supports account management.

---

**Note** – If the service does not have a `serviceAuthenticationMethod` set, it will default to the value of the `authenticationMethod` attribute.

---



---

**Note** – In per-user mode, “[pam\\_krb5 Service Module](#)” on page 154 (pam Kerberos) is used as the authentication service. `ServiceAuthenticationMethod` is not needed in this mode of operation.

---



---

**Note** – If the `enableShadowUpdate` switch is set to `true`, the `ldap_cachemgr` daemon binds to the LDAP server by using the authentication method that is defined in the `serviceAuthenticationMethod` parameter of `passwd-cmd`, if the method is defined. Otherwise, `authenticationMethod` is used. The daemon will not use the `none` authentication method.

---



The following example shows a section of a client profile in which the users will use sasl/digest-MD5 to authenticate to the directory server, but will use an SSL session to change their password.

```
serviceAuthenticationMethod=pam_ldap:sasl/digest-MD5
serviceAuthenticationMethod=passwd-cmd:tls:simple
```

## Pluggable Authentication Methods

By using the PAM framework, you can choose among several authentication services, including `pam_unix`, `pam_krb5`, and `pam_ldap`.

If the per-user authentication method is used, `pam_krb5`, the strongest authentication service of the three methods listed above, must be enabled. See [pam\\_krb5\(5\)](#) and the *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

The `pam_krb5` authentication system may be used even if per-user authentication is not enabled. If proxy or anonymous credential levels are used to access directory server data then restricting access to directory data on a per-user basis is not possible.

Because of its increased flexibility, support of stronger authentication methods, and ability to use account management, the use of `pam_ldap` is recommended over the use of `pam_unix` when anonymous or proxy authentication methods are used.

### `pam_unix` Service Modules

If you have not changed the `pam.conf(4)` file, `pam_unix` functionality is enabled by default.

---

**Note** – The `pam_unix` module has been removed and is no longer supported with Solaris. A set of other service modules provides equivalent or greater functionality. Therefore, in this guide, `pam_unix` refers to the equivalent functionality, not to the `pam_unix` module itself.

---

Following is a list of the modules that provide the equivalent `pam_unix` functionality.

```
pam_authok_check(5)
pam_authok_get(5)
pam_authok_store(5)
pam_dhkeys(5)
pam_passwd_auth(5)
pam_unix_account(5)
pam_unix_auth(5)
pam_unix_cred(5)
pam_unix_session(5)
```

`pam_unix` follows the traditional model of UNIX authentication, as described in the following list.

1. The client retrieves the user's encrypted password from the name service.
2. The user is prompted for the user's password.
3. The user's password is encrypted.
4. The client compares the two encrypted passwords to determine whether the user should be authenticated.

Additionally, there are two restrictions when using `pam_unix`.

- The password must be stored in UNIX crypt format and not in any other encryption methods, including clear.
- The `userPassword` attribute must be readable by the name service.

For example, if you set the credential level to `anonymous`, then anyone must be able to read the `userPassword` attribute. Similarly, if you set the credential level to `proxy`, then the proxy user must be able to read the `userPassword` attribute.

---

**Note** – `pam_unix` is not compatible with the `sasl` authentication method `digest-MD5`, since Sun Java System Directory Server requires passwords to be stored in the clear in order to use `digest-MD5`. `pam_unix` requires the password be stored in crypt format.

---

---

**Note** – `pam_unix` supports account management when the `enableShadowUpdate` switch is set to `true`. The controls for a remote LDAP user account are applied just as the controls are applied to a local user account that is defined in the `passwd` and `shadow` files. In `enableShadowUpdate` mode, for the LDAP account, the system updates and uses the shadow data on the LDAP server for password aging and account locking. Of course, the shadow data of the local account only applies to the local client system, whereas the shadow data of an LDAP user account applies to the user on all client systems.

Password history checking is only supported for the local client, not for an LDAP user account.

---

## `pam_krb5` Service Module

Refer to `pam_krb5(5)` and the *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

## `pam_ldap` Service Module

When implementing `pam_ldap`, the user binds to the LDAP server by using the authentication method defined in `pam_ldap`'s `serviceAuthenticationMethod` parameter, if one exists. Otherwise, `authenticationMethod` is used.

If `pam_ldap` is able to bind to the server with the user's identity and supplied password, it authenticates the user.

---

**Note** – Previously, if you enabled `pam_ldap` account management, all users needed to provide a login password for authentication any time they logged in to the system. Therefore, nonpassword-based logins using tools such as `rsh`, `rlogin`, or `ssh` would fail.

Now, however, `pam_ldap(5)`, when used with Sun Java System Directory Servers DS5.2p4 and newer releases, enables users to log in with `rsh`, `rlogin`, `rcp` and `ssh` without giving a password.

`pam_ldap(5)` is now modified to perform account management and retrieve the account status of users without authenticating to Directory Server as the user logging in. The new control to this on Directory Server is 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.9.5.8, which is enabled by default.

To modify this control for other than default, add Access Control Instructions (ACI) on Directory Server:

```
dn: oid=1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.9.5.8,cn=features,cn=config
objectClass: top
objectClass: directoryServerFeature
oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.9.5.8
cn:Password Policy Account Usable Request Control
aci: (targetattr != "aci")(version 3.0; acl "Account Usable";
    allow (read, search, compare, proxy)
    (groupdn = "ldap:///cn=Administrators,cn=config");)
creatorsName: cn=server,cn=plugins,cn=config
modifiersName: cn=server,cn=plugins,cn=config
```

---

`pam_ldap` does not read the `userPassword` attribute. Therefore, there is no need to grant access to read the `userPassword` attribute unless there are other clients using `pam_unix`. Also, `pam_ldap` does not support the `none` authentication method. Thus, you must define the `serviceAuthenticationMethod` or the `authenticationMethod` attributes so clients can use `pam_ldap`. See the `pam_ldap(5)` man page for more information.




---

**Caution** – If the simple authentication method is used, the `userPassword` attribute can be read on the wire by third parties.

---

See “[Example `pam.conf` File for `pam\_ldap`](#)” on page 213.

The following table summarizes the main differences between `pam_unix`, `pam_ldap`, and `pam_krb5`.

TABLE 9-5 Authentication Behavior in LDAP With `pam_unix`, `pam_ldap`, and `pam_krb5`

	<code>pam_unix</code>	<code>pam_ldap</code>	<code>pam_krb5</code>
Password Sent	Uses <code>passwd</code> service authentication method	Uses <code>passwd</code> service authentication method	Uses Kerberos single sign on technology, not passwords
New Password Sent	Encrypted	No encryption (unless TLS is used)	Uses Kerberos, no passwords are sent over the wire
New Password Stored	<code>crypt</code> format	Password storage scheme defined on Sun Java System Directory Server	Passwords are managed by Kerberos
Requires password read?	Yes	No	No
<code>sasl/digest-MD5</code> compatibility after changing password	No. Password is not stored in <code>clear</code> . User cannot authenticate.	Yes. As long as default storage scheme is set to <code>clear</code> , user can authenticate.	No. <code>sasl/GSSAPI</code> is used. There are no passwords over the wire and there are no passwords to be stored in the directory server, except when using a Kerberos kdc that manages its password database in the LDAP directory server.
Password policy supported?	Yes. <code>enableShadowUpdate</code> must be set to <code>true</code> .	Yes, if so configured.	See <a href="#">pam_krb5(5)</a> , Kerberos V5 Account Management Module.

## PAM and Changing Passwords

Use the `passwd` command to change a password. If the `enableShadowUpdate` switch is not set to `true`, the `userPassword` attribute must be writable by the user. If the `enableShadowUpdate` switch is set to `true`, the admin credentials must be able to update the `userPassword` attribute. Remember that the `serviceAuthenticationMethod` for `passwd -cmd` overrides the `authenticationMethod` for this operation. Depending on the authentication method that is used, the current password might be unencrypted on the wire.

In the case of `pam_unix`, the new `userPassword` attribute is encrypted using UNIX `crypt` format and tagged before being written to LDAP. Therefore, the new password is encrypted on the wire, regardless of the authentication method used to bind to the server. See the [pam\\_authtok\\_store\(5\)](#) man page for more information.

If the `enableShadowUpdate` switch is set to `true`, `pam_unix` also updates the related shadow information when the user password is changed. `pam_unix` updates the same shadow fields in the local shadow files that `pam_unix` updates when the local user password is changed.

As of the Solaris 10 software release, `pam_ldap` no longer supports password update. The previously recommended use of `pam_authok_store` with the `server_policy` option now replaces the `pam_ldap` password update capability. When you use `pam_authok_store`, the new password is sent to the LDAP server in the clear. Therefore, to ensure privacy, use TLS. If TLS is not used, the new user password is subject to snooping. If you set an untagged password with Sun Java System Directory Server, the software encrypts the password by using the `passwordStorageScheme` attribute. For more information about the `passwordStorageScheme`, see the section on user account management in the *Administration Guide* for the version of Sun Java System Directory Server that you are using.

---

**Note** – You need to consider the following configuration issues when setting the `passwordStorageScheme` attribute. If an NIS, or another client using `pam_unix` is using LDAP as a repository, then `passwordStorageScheme` needs to be `crypt`. Also, if using `pam_ldap` with `sasl/digest-MD5` with Sun Java System Directory Server, `passwordStorageScheme` must be set to `clear`.

---

## Account Management

If you select `pam_krb5` as your account and password management system, the Kerberos environment will manage all your account, password, account lockout, and other account management details. Refer to [pam\\_krb5\(5\)](#) and the *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

If you do not use `pam_krb5`, then LDAP naming services can be configured to take advantage of the password and account lockout policy support in Sun Java System Directory Server. You can configure [pam\\_ldap\(5\)](#) to support user account management. [passwd\(1\)](#) enforces password syntax rules set by the Sun Java System Directory Server password policy, when used with the proper PAM configuration.

The following account management features are supported through [pam\\_ldap\(5\)](#). These features depend on Sun Java System Directory Server's password and account lockout policy configuration. You can enable as many or as few of the features as you want.

- Password aging and expiration notification
  - Users must change their passwords according to a schedule. A password expires if it is not changed within the time configured. An expired password causes user authentication to fail.
  - Users see a warning message whenever they log in within the expiration warning period. The message specifies the number of hours or days until the password expires.
- Password syntax checking
  - New passwords must meet the minimum password length requirements. In addition, a password cannot match the value of the `uid`, `cn`, `sn`, or `mail` attributes in the user's directory entry.

- Password in history checking

Users cannot reuse passwords. If a user attempts to change the password to one that was previously used, `passwd(1)` fails. LDAP administrators can configure the number of passwords kept in the server's history list.

- User account lockout

A user account can be locked out after a given number of repeated authentication failures. A user can also be locked out if his account is inactivated by an administrator. Authentication will continue to fail until the account lockout time is passed or the administrator reactivates the account.

---

**Note** – The preceding account management features only work with the Sun Java System Directory Server. For information about configuring the password and account lockout policy on the server, see the “User Account Management” chapter in the Administration Guide for the version of Sun Java System Directory Server that you are using. Also see [“Example pam\\_conf file for pam\\_ldap Configured for Account Management” on page 215](#). Do not enable account management for proxy accounts.

---

Before configuring the password and account lockout policy on Sun Java System Directory Server, make sure all hosts use the “newest” LDAP client with `pam_ldap` account management.

In addition, make sure the clients have a properly configured `pam.conf(4)` file. Otherwise, LDAP naming services will not work when proxy or user passwords expire.

---

**Note** – Previously, if you enabled `pam_ldap` account management, all users needed to provide a login password for authentication any time they logged in to the system. Therefore, nonpassword-based logins using tools such as `rsh`, `rlogin`, or `ssh` would fail.

Now, however, `pam_ldap(5)`, when used with Sun Java System Directory Servers DS5.2p4 and newer releases, enables users to log in with `rsh`, `rlogin`, `rcp` and `ssh` without giving a password.

`pam_ldap(5)` is now modified to perform account management and retrieve the account status of users without authenticating to Directory Server as the user logging in. The new control to this on Directory Server is 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.9.5.8, which is enabled by default.

To modify this control for other than default, add Access Control Instructions (ACI) on Directory Server:

```
dn: oid=1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.9.5.8,cn=features,cn=config
objectClass: top
objectClass: directoryServerFeature
oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.9.5.8
cn>Password Policy Account Usable Request Control
aci: (targetattr != "aci")(version 3.0; acl "Account Usable";
    allow (read, search, compare, proxy)
    (groupdn = "ldap:///cn=Administrators,cn=config");)
creatorsName: cn=server,cn=plugins,cn=config
modifiersName: cn=server,cn=plugins,cn=config
```

---

## Account Management With `pam_unix`

If the `enableShadowUpdate` switch is set to `true` on the client, account management functionality that is available to local accounts is also available to LDAP accounts. Functionality includes password aging, account expiry and notification, failed login account locking, and so on. Also, the `-dLuNfnwx` options to the `passwd` command are now supported in LDAP. Thus, the full functionality of the `passwd` command and the `pam_unix*` modules in the files naming service is supported in the LDAP naming service. The `enableShadowUpdate` switch provides a way to implement consistent account management for users who are defined in both the files and the LDAP scope.

To prevent users from modifying their own account management data and thereby circumventing password policy, the LDAP server is configured to prevent user write access to the user's own shadow data on the server. An administrator with admin credentials performs the shadow data updates for a client system. Such a configuration, however, conflicts with the `pam_ldap` module, which requires that passwords be modifiable by users. Therefore, account management by `pam_ldap` and `pam_unix` are incompatible.



---

**Caution** – Do not use both `pam_ldap` and `pam_unix` in the same LDAP naming domain. Either all clients use `pam_ldap` or all clients use `pam_unix`. This limitation might indicate that you need a dedicated LDAP server. For example, a web or email application might expect users to change their own password on the LDAP server.

---

The implementation of `enableShadowUpdate` also requires that the admin credential (`adminDN` plus `adminPassword`) be stored locally on every client. Even though `adminPassword` is encrypted and can only be read from the `/var/ldap/ldap_client_cred` file by the `ldap_cachemgr` daemon, special care must be taken to protect the admin credential. To protect the credential, make it different from the server's directory manager (`cn=directory manager`). Another protection would be to configure the `serviceAuthenticationMethod` with a value of `tls:simple` or better for the `passwd-cmd` service, so that the value of `adminPassword` is not sent in the clear and therefore becomes vulnerable to snooping.

Unlike using `pam_ldap` for account management, using `pam_unix` for account management does not require a change to the `/etc/pam.conf` file. The default `/etc/pam.conf` file is sufficient.



# Planning Requirements for LDAP Naming Services (Tasks)

---

This chapter discusses the high-level planning you should do before beginning the server and client setup and installation processes.

This chapter covers the following topics.

- “LDAP Planning Overview” on page 161
- “Planning the LDAP Network Model” on page 161
- “Planning the Directory Information Tree (DIT)” on page 162
- “LDAP and Replica Servers” on page 163
- “Planning the LDAP Security Model” on page 164
- “Planning Client Profiles and Default Attribute Values for LDAP” on page 166
- “Planning the LDAP Data Population” on page 166

## LDAP Planning Overview

The LDAP client profile is a collection of configuration information an LDAP client uses to access LDAP naming services information about the supporting LDAP server. This chapter discusses the planning of the various aspects of the LDAP naming services. These include the network model, the directory information tree, the security model, the default values of the various profile attributes, and finally, the preparation for data population.

## Planning the LDAP Network Model

For availability and performance considerations, each subnet of the company-wide network should have its own LDAP server to service all the LDAP clients in the subnet. Only one of the servers needs to be a master LDAP server. The rest could all be replicas of the master server.

To plan for the network configuration, consider how many servers are available, how a client would be able to get to the servers, and in what order the servers should be accessed. If there is one per subnet, you could use the `defaultServerList` attribute to list all the servers and have

the LDAP client sort and manipulate the access order. If the servers need to be accessed in a certain order due to speed or data management reasons, you should use the `preferredServerList` attribute to define the fixed order of accessing the servers. Note that you might not want to put the master server on either of these lists to reduce the load on the master server.

In addition, you might find three more attributes worth consideration when planning for the server and network configuration. The `bindTimeLimit` attribute can be used to set the time-out value for a TCP connect request. The `searchTimeLimit` attribute can be used to set the time-out value for an LDAP search operation. The `profileTTL` attribute can be used to control how often the LDAP client should download its profile from the servers. For a slow or unstable network, the `bindTimeLimit` and `searchTimeLimit` attributes might need a larger value than the defaults. For early stage testing of the deployment, you might want to reduce the value of the `profileTTL` attribute to have the clients pick up the frequent changes made to the profile stored in the LDAP servers.

## Planning the Directory Information Tree (DIT)

LDAP naming services have a default directory information tree (DIT) and an associated default schema. For example, the `ou=people` container contains the user account, password, and shadow information. The `ou=hosts` container contains information about systems in the network. Each entry in the `ou=people` container would be of `objectclass posixAccount` and `shadowAccount`.

The default DIT is a well designed directory structure and is based on open standards. It should be sufficient for most of naming service needs, and is recommended to be used without changes. If you choose to use the default DIT, the only thing you need to decide is from which node (base DN) in the directory tree the naming services information will be searched for a given domain. This node is specified with the `defaultSearchBase` attribute. Additionally, you might want to set the `defaultSearchScope` attribute to tell the clients the scope of search a naming service lookup should perform. Is it just searching one level under the DN (one), or the entire subtree under the DN (sub)?

There are times, however, that more flexibility is needed for the LDAP naming service to either work with an existing DIT or handle a more complicated DIT with naming service data scattered around the directory tree. For example, user account entries may exist in different part of the tree. The `serviceSearchDescriptor`, `attributeMap`, and `objectclassMap` attributes in the client profile are designed to handle these situations.

A service search descriptor can be used to override the default search base, search scope, and search filter for a particular service. See [“Service Search Descriptors \(SSDs\) and Schema Mapping” on page 138](#).

The `AttributeMap` and `ObjectclassMap` attributes provide a way for schema mapping. They make it possible for the LDAP naming services to work with an existing DIT. You can map the

`posixAccount` object class to an existing object class, `myAccount`, for example. You can map an attribute in the `posixAccount` object class to an attribute in the `myAccount` object class.

## Multiple Directory Servers

Multiple LDAP servers can serve one DIT. For example, some subtrees of the DIT reside on other LDAP servers. In this case, an LDAP server may refer the LDAP client to a different server for the naming data it knows about but is not in its own database. If you plan such a DIT configuration, you should set the clients' profile attribute `followReferrals` to indicate to the LDAP naming service to follow server referrals to continue naming service lookups. However, it is best to have all naming data for a given domain reside on a single directory server, if at all possible.

Referrals can be useful if you want to have clients access read-only replicas most of the time and follow referrals to a read/write master server only when necessary. In this way, the master server does not get overloaded with requests that could be handled by replicas.

## Data Sharing With Other Applications

To make best use of LDAP, you should have a single LDAP entry for each logical entry. For example, for a user you can have not only company white-page information, but also Solaris account information, and possibly application-specific data. Since `posixAccount` and `shadowAccount` are auxiliary object classes, they can be added to any entry in the directory. This will require careful planning, setup, and administration.

## Choosing the Directory Suffix

See the Sun Java System Directory Server (formerly Sun ONE Directory Server) documentation for information about how to choose an appropriate directory suffix.

# LDAP and Replica Servers

There are three different strategies to employ when setting up replica servers.

- Single-master replication
- Floating-master replication
- Multi-master replication

### *Single-master*

With single-master replication, only one master server for any given partition or non-partitioned network holds writable copies of directory entries. Any replica servers have

read-only copies of the directory entries. While both replicas and masters can perform searches, compares, and bind operations, only the master server can perform write operations.

The potential disadvantage to the single-master replication strategy is that the master server is a single point of failure. If the master server goes down, none of the replicas can process write operations.

#### *Floating-master*

The floating-master strategy is similar to the single-master strategy in that there is only one master server with write capabilities at any given time for a given partitioned or non-partitioned network. However, when implementing the floating-master strategy, when the master server goes down, a replica is automatically transformed into a master server by way of an algorithm.

One potential disadvantage to the floating-master replication strategy is that if your network becomes partitioned and replicas on either side of the partition become masters, the process of reconciling the new masters can be very complicated if the network is rejoined.

#### *Multi-master*

With multi-master replication, there are multiple master servers with their own read-write copies of the directory entry data. While the multi-master strategy eliminates the problem of having a single point of failure, update conflicts can occur between servers. In other words, if an entry's attribute is modified around the same time on two masters, an update conflict resolution policy, such as "last writer wins," must be in place.

For information about how to set up replica servers, refer to the *Administration Guide* for the version of Sun Java System Directory Server that you are using.

## Planning the LDAP Security Model

To plan for the security model, you should first consider what identity the LDAP client should be using to talk to the LDAP server. For example, you must decide if you want an enterprise-wide single sign-on solution, with no passwords being sent over the wire, or the wire encryption of data and the ability to access control data results from the directory server on a per-user basis. You must also decide whether you want strong authentication to protect the user password flow across the wire, and/or if you need to encrypt the session between the LDAP client and the LDAP server to protect the LDAP data transmitted.

The `credentialLevel` and `authenticationMethod` attributes in the profile are used for this. There are four possible credential levels for `credentialLevel`: `anonymous`, `proxy`, `proxy anonymous` and `self`. See "[LDAP Naming Services Security Model](#)" on page 144 for a detailed discussion of LDAP naming service security concepts.

---

**Note** – Previously, if you enabled `pam_ldap` account management, all users needed to provide a login password for authentication any time they logged in to the system. Therefore, nonpassword-based logins using tools such as `rsh`, `rlogin`, or `ssh` would fail.

Now, however, `pam_ldap(5)`, when used with Sun Java System Directory Servers DS5.2p4 and newer releases, enables users to log in with `rsh`, `rlogin`, `rcp` and `ssh` without giving a password.

`pam_ldap(5)` is now modified to perform account management and retrieve the account status of users without authenticating to Directory Server as the user logging in. The new control to this on Directory Server is 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.9.5.8, which is enabled by default.

To modify this control for other than default, add Access Control Instructions (ACI) on Directory Server:

```
dn: oid=1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.9.5.8,cn=features,cn=config
objectClass: top
objectClass: directoryServerFeature
oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.9.5.8
cn:Password Policy Account Usable Request Control
aci: (targetattr != "aci")(version 3.0; acl "Account Usable";
    allow (read, search, compare, proxy)
    (groupdn = "ldap:///cn=Administrators,cn=config");)
creatorsName: cn=server,cn=plugins,cn=config
modifiersName: cn=server,cn=plugins,cn=config
```

---

**Note** – If you enable `pam_krb5` and Kerberos as an enterprise-wide single sign on solution, you can design a system whereby login passwords are only needed once at the start of a session. See *System Administration Guide: Security Services* for further details. If you enable Kerberos you will generally also need to enable DNS. See the chapters on DNS in this manual for further details.

---

The main decisions you need to make when planning your security model are the following.

- Will you use Kerberos and per-user authentication?
- What credential level and authentication methods will LDAP clients use?
- Will you use TLS?
- Do you need to be backward compatible with NIS? In other words, will clients use `pam_unix` or `pam_ldap`?
- What will the servers' `passwordStorageScheme` attribute settings be?
- How will you set up the Access Control Information?

For more information about ACIs, consult the *Administration Guide* for the version of Sun Java System Directory Server that you are using.

- Will clients use `pam_unix` or `pam_ldap` to perform account management?

## Planning Client Profiles and Default Attribute Values for LDAP

By going through the previous planning steps (network model, DIT, and security model), you should have some idea of the values for the following profile attributes.

- `cn`
- `defaultServerList`
- `preferredServerList`
- `bindTimeLimit`
- `searchTimeLimit`
- `profileTTL`
- `defaultSearchBase`
- `defaultSearchScope`
- `serviceSearchDescriptor`
- `attributeMap`
- `objectclassMap`
- `followReferrals`
- `credentialLevel`
- `authenticationMethod`
- `serviceCredentialLevel`
- `serviceAuthenticationMethod`

Of the preceding attributes, only `cn`, `defaultServerList`, and `defaultSearchBase` are required. They have no default values. The rest are optional, and some have default values.

See [Chapter 12, “Setting Up LDAP Clients \(Tasks\)”](#) for more information about setting up LDAP clients.

## Planning the LDAP Data Population

To populate the LDAP server with data, after the LDAP server has been configured with the proper DIT and schema. Use the new `ldapaddent` tool. This tool will create entries in LDAP containers from their corresponding `/etc` files. It can be used to populate data into the containers for the following types of data: `aliases`, `auto_*`, `bootparams`, `ethers`, `group`, `hosts` (including IPv6 addresses), `netgroup`, `netmasks`, `networks`, `passwd`, `shadow`, `protocols`, `publickey`, `rpc`, and `services`.

By default, `ldapaddent` reads from the standard input and adds this data to the LDAP container associated with the database specified on the command line. But an input file from which data should be read can be specified using the `-f` option.

Because the entries are stored in the directory based on the client's configuration, the client must be configured to use the LDAP naming services.

For better performance, load the databases in this order:

1. `passwd` database followed by `shadow` database
2. `networks` database followed by `netmasks` database
3. `bootparams` database followed by `ethers` database

Note that when adding automounter entries, the database name is in the form of `auto_*` (for example, `auto_home`).

If you have `/etc` files from different hosts to add to the LDAP server, you can either merge all of them into the same `/etc` file and then use `ldapaddent` on one host to add the files, or perform `ldapaddent` on the different hosts one by one, with the expectation that each host is already configured as a LDAP client.

If your naming service data is already in an NIS server, and you want to move the data to the LDAP server for LDAP naming services, use the `ypcat` (or `niscat`) command to dump the NIS map into files. Then, run `ldapaddent` against these files to add the data to the LDAP server.

---

**Note** – `ldapaddent` can only be run on an LDAP client.

---

The following procedure assumes that the tables are to be extracted from a `yp` client.

## ▼ How to Populate a Server With `host` Entries Using `ldapaddent`

- 1 **Make sure that Sun Java System Directory Server was set up using `idsconfig`.**

- 2 **On a client machine, become superuser or assume an equivalent role.**

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control \(Tasks\),” in \*System Administration Guide: Security Services\*](#).

- 3 **Make the machine an LDAP client.**

```
# ldapclient init -a profileName=new -a domainName=west.example.com \
192.168.0.1
```

- 4 **Populate the server with data.**

```
# ldapaddent -D "cn=directory manager" -f /etc/hosts hosts
```

You will be prompted for a password.

In this example, `ldapaddent` will use the authentication method that has been configured in the profile `new`. Selecting `simple` will cause the password to be sent in the clear. For more information, refer to the [ldapaddent\(1M\)](#) man page.



## Setting Up Sun Java System Directory Server With LDAP Clients (Tasks)

---

This chapter describes how to configure Sun Java System Directory Server (formerly Sun ONE Directory Server) to support a network of Solaris LDAP naming services clients. The information is specific to the Sun Java System Directory Server. For information about installing and configuring the directory server, see the Sun Java System Directory Server documentation, that is included with the Sun Java Enterprise System.

---

**Note** – You must have already performed all the procedures described in the installation and configuration documentation that shipped with your Sun Java System Directory Server before you can configure Sun Java System Directory Server to work with Solaris LDAP clients.

---

---

**Note** – A directory server (an LDAP server) *cannot* be its own client.

---

This chapter covers the following topics.

- “Configuring Sun Java System Directory Server by Using `idsconfig`” on page 170
- “Using Service Search Descriptors to Modify Client Access to Various Services” on page 172
- “Running `idsconfig`” on page 174
- “Populating the Directory Server Using `ldapaddent`” on page 179
- “Managing Printer Entries” on page 180
- “Populating the Directory Server With Additional Profiles” on page 181
- “Configuring the Directory Server to Enable Account Management” on page 182
- “Migrating Your Sun Java System Directory Server” on page 186

# Configuring Sun Java System Directory Server by Using `idsconfig`

## Creating a Checklist Based on Your Server Installation

During the server installation process, you will have defined crucial variables, with which you should create a checklist similar to the one below before launching `idsconfig`. You can use the blank checklist provided in [“Blank Checklists” on page 209](#).

**Note** – The information included below will serve as the basis for all examples that follow in the LDAP related chapters. The example domain is of an widget company, Example, Inc. with stores nationwide. The examples will deal with the West Coast Division, with the domain `west.example.com`

TABLE 11-1 Server Variables Defined

Variable	Definition for Example Network
Port number at which an instance of the directory server is installed	389 (default)
Name of server	<b>myserver</b> (from the FQDN <code>myserver.west.example.com</code> or <code>192.168.0.1</code> )
Replica server(s) (IPnumber:port number)	<b>192.168.0.2</b> [for <code>myreplica.west.example.com</code> ]
Directory manager	<code>cn=directory manager</code> (default)
Domain name to be served	<b>west.example.com</b>
Maximum time (in seconds) to process client requests before timing out	- 1 -
Maximum number of entries returned for each search request	- 1 -

**Note** – If you are using hostnames in defining `defaultServerList` or `preferredServerList`, you **MUST** ensure LDAP is not used for hosts lookup. This means `ldap` must not be in `/etc/nsswitch.conf` `hosts` line.

TABLE 11-2 Client Profile Variables Defined

Variable	Definition for Example Network
Profile name (the default name is default)	<b>WestUserProfile</b>
Server list (defaults to the local subnet)	<b>192.168.0.1</b>
Preferred server list (listed in order of which server to try first, second, and so on)	<b>none</b>
Search scope (number of levels down through the directory tree. 'One', the default, or 'Sub')	<b>one</b> (default)
Credential used to gain access to server. Default is anonymous	<b>proxy</b>
Follow Referrals? ( a pointer to another server if the main server is unavailable) Default is no.	<b>Y</b>
Search time limit (default is 30 seconds) for waiting for server to return information.	<b>default</b>
Bind time limit (default is 10 seconds) for contacting the server.	<b>default</b>
Authentication method Default is none.	<b>simple</b>

---

**Note** – Client profiles are defined per domain. At least one profile must be defined for a given domain.

---

## Attribute Indexes

`idsconfig` indexes the following list of attributes for improved performance.

```

membernisnetgroup    pres,eq,sub
nisnetgrouptriple    pres,eq,sub
ipHostNumber         pres,eq,sub
uidNumber             pres,eq
gidNumber             pres,eq
ipNetworkNumber      pres,eq
automountkey         pres,eq
oncRpcNumber          pres,eq

```

## Schema Definitions

`idsconfig(1M)` automatically adds the necessary schema definitions. Unless you are very experienced in LDAP administration, do not manually modify the server schema. See [Chapter 14, “LDAP General Reference \(Reference\)”](#) for an extended list of schemas used by the LDAP naming service.

## Using Browsing Indexes

The browsing index functionality of the Sun Java System Directory Server, otherwise known as the virtual list view (VLV), provides a way in which a client can view a select group or number of entries from very long list, thus making the search process less time consuming for each client. Browsing indexes provide optimized, predefined search parameters with which the Solaris LDAP naming client can access specific information from the various services more quickly. Keep in mind that if you do not create browsing indexes, the clients may not get all the entries of a given type because the server limits for search time or number of entries might be enforced.

VLV indexes are configured on the directory server and the proxy user has read access to these indexes.

Before configuring browsing indexes on the Sun Java System Directory Server, consider the performance cost associated with using these indexes. For more information, refer to the *Administration Guide* for the version of Sun Java System Directory Server that you are using.

`idsconfig` creates entries for several VLV indexes. Use the `directoryserver` script to stop the server and to create the actual VLV indexes. See the [idsconfig\(1M\)](#) and the [directoryserver\(1M\)](#) man pages for more information. Refer to the output of the `idsconfig` command to determine the VLV entries created by `idsconfig` and the syntax of the corresponding `directoryserver` commands that you need to run. See “[Example idsconfig Setup](#)” on page 175 for sample `idsconfig` output.

## Using Service Search Descriptors to Modify Client Access to Various Services

A service search descriptor (SSD) changes the default search request for a given operation in LDAP to a search you define. SSDs are particularly useful if, for example, you have been using LDAP with customized container definitions or another operating system and are now transitional to the latest Solaris release. Using SSDs, you can configure Solaris LDAP naming services without having to change your existing LDAP database and data.

## Setting Up SSDs Using `idsconfig`

Assume your predecessor at Example, Inc. had configured LDAP, storing users in `ou=Users` container. You are now upgrading to the latest Solaris release. By definition, Solaris LDAP client assumes that user entries are stored in `ou=People` container. Thus, when it comes to searching the `passwd` service, LDAP client will search the `ou=people` level of the DIT and not find the correct values.

One laborious solution to the above problem would be to completely overwrite Example, Inc.'s existing DIT and to rewrite all the exiting applications on Example, Inc.'s network so that they are compatible with the new LDAP naming service. A second, far preferable solution would be to use an SSD that would tell LDAP client to look for user info in an `ou=Users` container instead of the default `ou=people` container.

You would define the necessary SSD during the configuration of the Sun Java System Directory Server using `idsconfig`. The prompt line appears as follows.

```
Do you wish to setup Service Search Descriptors (y/n/h)? y
  A Add a Service Search Descriptor
  D Delete a SSD
  M Modify a SSD
  P Display all SSD's
  H Help
  X Clear all SSD's

  Q Exit menu
Enter menu choice: [Quit] a
Enter the service id: passwd
Enter the base: service ou=user,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com
Enter the scope: one[default]
  A Add a Service Search Descriptor
  D Delete a SSD
  M Modify a SSD
  P Display all SSD's
  H Help
  X Clear all SSD's

  Q Exit menu
Enter menu choice: [Quit] p

Current Service Search Descriptors:
=====
Passwd:ou=Users,ou=west,ou=example,ou=com?

Hit return to continue.
```

```
A Add a Service Search Descriptor
D Delete a SSD
M Modify a SSD
P Display all SSD's
H Help
X Clear all SSD's

Q Exit menu
Enter menu choice: [Quit] q
```

## Running `idsconfig`

---

**Note** – You do not need special rights to run `idsconfig`, nor do you need to be an LDAP naming client. Remember to create a checklist as mentioned in [“Creating a Checklist Based on Your Server Installation” on page 170](#) in preparation for running `idsconfig`. You do not have to run `idsconfig` from a server or an LDAP naming service client machine. You can run `idsconfig` from any Solaris machine on the network.

---



---

**Caution** – `idsconfig` sends the Directory Manager's password in the clear. If you do not want this to happen, you must run `idsconfig` on the directory server itself, not on a client.

---

## ▼ How to Configure Sun Java System Directory Server by Using `idsconfig`

- 1 **Make sure the target Sun Java System Directory Server is up and running.**

- 2 **Run `idsconfig`.**

```
# /usr/lib/ldap/idsconfig
```

Refer to [Example 11–1](#) for an example run of `idsconfig` using the definitions listed in the server and client checklists at the beginning of this chapter in [“Creating a Checklist Based on Your Server Installation” on page 170](#).

- 3 **Answer the questions when prompted.**

Note that 'no' [n] is the default user input. If you need clarification on any given question, type

```
h
```

and a brief help paragraph will appear.

After `idsconfig` has completed the setup of the directory, you need to run the specified commands on the server before the server setup is complete and the server is ready to serve clients.

## Example `idsconfig` Setup

This section provides an example of a basic `idsconfig` setup that uses many of the defaults. The most complicated method of modifying client profiles is to create SSDs. Refer to [“Using Service Search Descriptors to Modify Client Access to Various Services” on page 172](#) for a detailed discussion.

The data in square brackets after a prompt indicates the default value for that prompt. To accept the default value, press Return.

---

**Note** – Any parameters that are left blank in the summary screen are not set up.

---

After `idsconfig` has completed the setup of the directory, you need to run the specified commands on the server before the server setup is complete and the server is ready to serve clients.

### EXAMPLE 11-1 Running `idsconfig` for the Example, Inc. Network

In the following example, the `idsconfig` utility is run immediately after a server instance is created on the LDAP server.

#### # `usr/lib/ldap/idsconfig`

It is strongly recommended that you BACKUP the directory server before running `idsconfig`.

Hit Ctrl-C at any time before the final confirmation to exit.

```
Do you wish to continue with server setup (y/n/h)? [n] y
Enter the JES Directory Server's hostname to setup: myserver
Enter the port number for iDS (h=help): [389]
Enter the directory manager DN: [cn=Directory Manager]
Enter passwd for cn=Directory Manager :
Enter the domainname to be served (h=help): [west.example.com]
Enter LDAP Base DN (h=help): [dc=west,dc=example,dc=com]
  Checking LDAP Base DN ...
  Validating LDAP Base DN and Suffix ...
  No valid suffixes were found for Base DN dc=west,dc=example,dc=com
Enter suffix to be created (b=back/h=help): [dc=west,dc=example,dc=com]
Enter ldbm database name (b=back/h=help): [west]
```

**EXAMPLE 11-1** Running idsconfig for the Example, Inc. Network *(Continued)*

```

    sasl/GSSAPI is not supported by this LDAP server
Enter the profile name (h=help): [default] WestUserProfile
Default server list (h=help): [192.168.0.1]
Preferred server list (h=help):
Choose desired search scope (one, sub, h=help): [one]
The following are the supported credential levels:
  1 anonymous
  2 proxy
  3 proxy anonymous
  4 self
Choose Credential level [h=help]: [1] 2
The following are the supported Authentication Methods:
  1 none
  2 simple
  3 sasl/DIGEST-MD5
  4 tls:simple
  5 tls:sasl/DIGEST-MD5
  6 sasl/GSSAPI
Choose Authentication Method (h=help): [1] 2

Current authenticationMethod: simple
Do you want to add another Authentication Method? n
Do you want the clients to follow referrals (y/n/h)? [n]
Do you want to modify the server timelimit value (y/n/h)? [n] y
Enter the time limit for iDS (current=3600): [-1]
Do you want to modify the server sizelimit value (y/n/h)? [n] y
Enter the size limit for iDS (current=2000): [-1]
Do you want to store passwords in "crypt" format (y/n/h)? [n] y
Do you want to setup a Service Authentication Methods (y/n/h)? [n]
Client search time limit in seconds (h=help): [30]
Profile Time To Live in seconds (h=help): [43200]
Bind time limit in seconds (h=help): [10]
Do you want to enable shadow update (y/n/h)? [n]
Do you wish to setup Service Search Descriptors (y/n/h)? [n]

```

**Summary of Configuration**

```

 1 Domain to serve           : west.example.com
 2 Base DN to setup         : dc=west,dc=example,dc=com
   Suffix to create         : dc=west,dc=example,dc=com
   Database to create       : west
 3 Profile name to create   : WestUserProfile
 4 Default Server List      : 192.168.0.1
 5 Preferred Server List    :

```



## EXAMPLE 11-1 Running idsconfig for the Example, Inc. Network (Continued)

```

6 Default Search Scope      : one
7 Credential Level         : proxy
8 Authentication Method    : simple
9 Enable Follow Referrals  : FALSE
10 iDS Time Limit          : -1
11 iDS Size Limit          : -1
12 Enable crypt password storage : TRUE
13 Service Auth Method pam_ldap :
14 Service Auth Method keysevr :
15 Service Auth Method passwd-cmd:
16 Search Time Limit       : 30
17 Profile Time to Live    : 43200
18 Bind Limit              : 10
19 Enable shadow update    : FALSE
20 Service Search Descriptors Menu

```

Enter config value to change: (1-20 0=commit changes) [0]

Enter DN for proxy agent: [cn=proxyagent,ou=profile,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com]

Enter passwd for proxyagent:

Re-enter passwd:

WARNING: About to start committing changes. (y=continue, n=EXIT) y

1. Changed timelimit to -1 in cn=config.
2. Changed sizelimit to -1 in cn=config.
3. Changed passwordstoragescheme to "crypt" in cn=config.
4. Schema attributes have been updated.
5. Schema objectclass definitions have been added.
6. Database west successfully created.
7. Suffix dc=west,dc=example,dc=com successfully created.
8. NisDomainObject added to dc=west,dc=example,dc=com.
9. Top level "ou" containers complete.
10. automount maps: auto\_home auto\_direct auto\_master auto\_shared processed.
11. ACI for dc=west,dc=example,dc=com modified to disable self modify.
12. Add of VLV Access Control Information (ACI).
13. Proxy Agent cn=proxyagent,ou=profile,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com added.
14. Give cn=proxyagent,ou=profile,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com read permission for password.
15. Generated client profile and loaded on server.
16. Processing eq,pres indexes:
  - uidNumber (eq,pres) Finished indexing.
  - ipNetworkNumber (eq,pres) Finished indexing.
  - gidnumber (eq,pres) Finished indexing.
  - oncrpcnumber (eq,pres) Finished indexing.
  - automountKey (eq,pres) Finished indexing.

## EXAMPLE 11-1 Running idsconfig for the Example, Inc. Network (Continued)

```

17. Processing eq,pres,sub indexes:
    ipHostNumber (eq,pres,sub)   Finished indexing.
    membervisnetgroup (eq,pres,sub) Finished indexing.
    nisnetgrouptriple (eq,pres,sub) Finished indexing.
18. Processing VLV indexes:
    west.example.com.getgrent vlv_index   Entry created
    west.example.com.gethostent vlv_index  Entry created
    west.example.com.getnetent vlv_index   Entry created
    west.example.com.getpwent vlv_index    Entry created
    west.example.com.getrpcent vlv_index   Entry created
    west.example.com.getspent vlv_index    Entry created
    west.example.com.getauhoent vlv_index  Entry created
    west.example.com.getsoluent vlv_index  Entry created
    west.example.com.getauduent vlv_index  Entry created
    west.example.com.getauthent vlv_index  Entry created
    west.example.com.getexecent vlv_index  Entry created
    west.example.com.getprofent vlv_index  Entry created
    west.example.com.getmailent vlv_index  Entry created
    west.example.com.getbootent vlv_index  Entry created
    west.example.com.getethent vlv_index   Entry created
    west.example.com.getngrpent vlv_index  Entry created
    west.example.com.getipnent vlv_index   Entry created
    west.example.com.getmaskent vlv_index  Entry created
    west.example.com.getprent vlv_index    Entry created
    west.example.com.getip4ent vlv_index   Entry created
    west.example.com.getip6ent vlv_index   Entry created

```

idsconfig: Setup of iDS server myserver is complete.

Note: idsconfig has created entries for VLV indexes.

For DS5.x, use the `directoryserver(1m)` script on myserver to stop the server. Then, using `directoryserver`, follow the `directoryserver` examples below to create the actual VLV indexes.

For DS6.x, use `dsadm` command delivered with DS6.x on myserver to stop the server. Then, using `dsadm`, follow the `dsadm` examples below to create the actual VLV indexes.

```

directoryserver -s <server-instance> vlindex -n west -T west.example.com.getgrent
directoryserver -s <server-instance> vlindex -n west -T west.example.com.gethostent
directoryserver -s <server-instance> vlindex -n west -T west.example.com.getnetent
directoryserver -s <server-instance> vlindex -n west -T west.example.com.getpwent
directoryserver -s <server-instance> vlindex -n west -T west.example.com.getrpcent

```

**EXAMPLE 11-1** Running idsconfig for the Example, Inc. Network (Continued)

```

directoryserver -s <server-instance> vlindex -n west -T west.example.com.getspent
directoryserver -s <server-instance> vlindex -n west -T west.example.com.getauhoent
directoryserver -s <server-instance> vlindex -n west -T west.example.com.getsoluent
directoryserver -s <server-instance> vlindex -n west -T west.example.com.getauduent
directoryserver -s <server-instance> vlindex -n west -T west.example.com.getauthent
directoryserver -s <server-instance> vlindex -n west -T west.example.com.getexecent
directoryserver -s <server-instance> vlindex -n west -T west.example.com.getprofent
directoryserver -s <server-instance> vlindex -n west -T west.example.com.getmailent
directoryserver -s <server-instance> vlindex -n west -T west.example.com.getbootent
directoryserver -s <server-instance> vlindex -n west -T west.example.com.getethent
directoryserver -s <server-instance> vlindex -n west -T west.example.com.getngrpent
directoryserver -s <server-instance> vlindex -n west -T west.example.com.getipnent
directoryserver -s <server-instance> vlindex -n west -T west.example.com.getmaskent
directoryserver -s <server-instance> vlindex -n west -T west.example.com.getprent
directoryserver -s <server-instance> vlindex -n west -T west.example.com.getip4ent
directoryserver -s <server-instance> vlindex -n west -T west.example.com.getip6ent

```

```

<install-path>/bin/dsadm reindex -l -t west.example.com.getgrent <directory-instance-path>
dc=west,dc=example,dc=com
<install-path>/bin/dsadm reindex -l -t west.example.com.gethostent <directory-instance-path>
dc=west,dc=example,dc=com
.
.
.
<install-path>/bin/dsadm reindex -l -t west.example.com.getip6ent <directory-instance-path>
dc=west,dc=example,dc=com

```

## Populating the Directory Server Using ldapaddent

---

**Note** – Before populating the directory server with data, you must configure the server to store passwords in UNIX Crypt format if you are using `pam_unix`. If you are using `pam_ldap`, you can store passwords in any format. For more information about setting the password in UNIX crypt format, see the Sun Java System Directory Server documents.

---

ldapaddent reads from the standard input (that being an `/etc/filename` like `passwd`) and places this data to the container associated with the service. Client configuration determines how the data will be written by default.

**Note** – `ldapaddent(1M)` can only run on an LDAP client. [Chapter 12, “Setting Up LDAP Clients \(Tasks\)”](#), describes how to configure a client for the LDAP naming service.

---

## ▼ How to Populate Sun Java System Directory Server With User Password Data Using `ldapaddent`

See `ldapaddent(1M)`. See [Chapter 9, “LDAP Basic Components and Concepts \(Overview\)”](#) for information about LDAP security and write-access to the directory server.

- Use the `ldapaddent` command to add `/etc/passwd` entries to the server.

```
# ldapaddent -D "cn=directory manager" -f /etc/passwd passwd
```

## Managing Printer Entries

### Adding Printers

To add printer entries to the LDAP directory, use either the `printmgr` configuration tool or the `lpset -n ldap` command-line utility. See [`lpset\(1M\)`](#). Note that the printer objects added to the directory only define the connection parameter, required by print system clients, of printers. Local print server configuration data is still held in files. A typical printer entry would look like the following:

```
printer-uri=myprinter,ou=printers,dc=mtg,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass=top
objectclass=printerService
objectclass=printerAbstract
objectclass=sunPrinter
printer-name=myprinter
sun-printer-bsdaddr=printsvr.example.com,myprinter,Solaris
sun-printer-kvp=description=HP LaserJet (PS)
printer-uri=myprinter
```

## Using lpget

`lpget(1M)` can be used to list all printer entries known by the LDAP client's LDAP directory. If the LDAP client's LDAP server is a replica server, then printers listed might not be the same as that in the master LDAP server depending on the update replication agreement. See `lpget(1M)` for more information.

For example, to list all printers for a given base DN, type the following:

```
# lpget -n ldap list
myprinter:
    dn=myprinter,ou=printers,dc=mkt,dc=example,dc=com
    bsdaddr=printsvr.example.com,myprinter,Solaris
    description=HP LaserJet (PS)
```

## Populating the Directory Server With Additional Profiles

Use `ldapclient` with the `genprofile` option to create an LDIF representation of a configuration profile, based on the attributes specified. The profile you create can then be loaded into an LDAP server to be used as the client profile. The client profile can be downloaded by the client by using `ldapclient init`.

Refer to `ldapclient(1M)` for information about using `ldapclient genprofile`.

### ▼ How to Populate the Directory Server With Additional Profiles Using `ldapclient`

#### 1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role.

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control (Tasks),” in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

#### 2 Use `ldapclient` with the `genprofile` command.

```
# ldapclient genprofile \
-a profileName=myprofile \
-a defaultSearchBase=dc=west,dc=example,dc=com \
-a "defaultServerList=192.168.0.1 192.168.0.2:386" \
> myprofile.ldif
```

**3 Upload the new profile to the server.**

```
# ldapadd -h 192.168.0.1 -D "cn=directory manager" -f myprofile.ldif
```

## Configuring the Directory Server to Enable Account Management

Account management can be implemented for clients that use `pam_ldap` and for clients that use `pam_unix`.



---

**Caution** – Do not use both `pam_ldap` and `pam_unix` in the same LDAP naming domain. Either all clients use `pam_ldap` or all clients use `pam_unix`. This limitation might indicate that you need a dedicated LDAP server.

---

### For Clients That Use `pam_ldap`

In order for `pam_ldap` to work properly, the password and account lockout policy must be properly configured on the server. You can use the Directory Server Console or `ldapmodify` to configure the account management policy for the LDAP directory. For procedures and more information, see the “User Account Management” chapter in the *Administration Guide* for the version of Sun Java System Directory Server that you are using.

---

**Note** – Previously, if you enabled `pam_ldap` account management, all users needed to provide a login password for authentication any time they logged in to the system. Therefore, nonpassword-based logins using tools such as `rsh`, `rlogin`, or `ssh` would fail.

Now, however, `pam_ldap(5)`, when used with Sun Java System Directory Servers DS5.2p4 and newer releases, enables users to log in with `rsh`, `rlogin`, `rcp` and `ssh` without giving a password.

`pam_ldap(5)` is now modified to perform account management and retrieve the account status of users without authenticating to Directory Server as the user logging in. The new control to this on Directory Server is 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.9.5.8, which is enabled by default.

To modify this control for other than default, add Access Control Instructions (ACI) on Directory Server:

```
dn: oid=1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.9.5.8,cn=features,cn=config
objectClass: top
objectClass: directoryServerFeature
oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.9.5.8
cn:Password Policy Account Usable Request Control
aci: (targetattr != "aci")(version 3.0; acl "Account Usable";
    allow (read, search, compare, proxy)
    (groupdn = "ldap:///cn=Administrators,cn=config");)
creatorsName: cn=server,cn=plugins,cn=config
modifiersName: cn=server,cn=plugins,cn=config
```

---

Passwords for proxy users should *never* be allowed to expire. If proxy passwords expire, clients using the proxy credential level cannot retrieve naming service information from the server. To ensure that proxy users have passwords that do not expire, modify the proxy accounts with the following script.

```
# ldapmodify -h ldapserver -D administrator DN \
-w administrator password <<EOF
dn: proxy user DN
DNchangetype: modify
replace: passwordexpirationtime
passwordexpirationtime: 20380119031407Z
EOF
```

**Note** – `pam_ldap` account management relies on Sun Java System Directory Server to maintain and provide password aging and account expiration information for users. The directory server does not interpret the corresponding data from shadow entries to validate user accounts. `pam_unix`, however, examines the shadow data to determine if accounts are locked or if passwords are aged. Since the shadow data is not kept up to date by the LDAP naming services or the directory server, `pam_unix` should not grant access based on the shadow data. The shadow data is retrieved using the proxy identity. Therefore, do not allow proxy users to have read access to the `userPassword` attribute. Denying proxy users read access to `userPassword` prevents `pam_unix` from making an invalid account validation.

---

## For Clients That Use `pam_unix`

To enable Solaris LDAP clients to use `pam_unix` for account management, the server must be set up to enable the updating of shadow data. Unlike `pam_ldap` account management, `pam_unix` does not require extra configuration steps. All configuration can be performed by running the `idsconfig` utility. For a basic `idsconfig` run, see [Example 11-1](#).

The following shows the output of two `idsconfig` runs.

The first `idsconfig` run uses an existing client profile.

```
# /usr/lib/ldap/idsconfig
```

```
It is strongly recommended that you BACKUP the directory server
before running idsconfig.
```

```
Hit Ctrl-C at any time before the final confirmation to exit.
```

```
Do you wish to continue with server setup (y/n/h)? [n] y
Enter the JES Directory Server's hostname to setup: myserver
Enter the port number for iDS (h=help): [389]
Enter the directory manager DN: [cn=Directory Manager]
Enter passwd for cn=Directory Manager :
Enter the domainname to be served (h=help): [west.example.com]
Enter LDAP Base DN (h=help): [dc=west,dc=example,dc=com]
Checking LDAP Base DN ...
Validating LDAP Base DN and Suffix ...
sasL/GSSAPI is not supported by this LDAP server
```

```
Enter the profile name (h=help): [default] WestUserProfile
```

```
Profile 'WestUserProfile' already exists, it is possible to enable
shadow update now. idsconfig will exit after shadow update
```



is enabled. You can also continue to overwrite the profile or create a new one and be given the chance to enable shadow update later.

```
Just enable shadow update (y/n/h)? [n] y
Add the administrator identity (y/n/h)? [y]
Enter DN for the administrator: [cn=admin,ou=profile,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com]
Enter passwd for the administrator:
Re-enter passwd:
  ADDED: Administrator identity cn=admin,ou=profile,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com.
        Proxy ACI LDAP_Naming_Services_proxy_password_read does not
        exist for dc=west,dc=example,dc=com.
  ACI SET: Give cn=admin,ou=profile,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com read/write access
        to shadow data.
  ACI SET: Non-Admin access to shadow data denied.

Shadow update has been enabled.
```

The second `idsconfig` run creates a new profile for later use. Only partial output is displayed.

```
# /usr/lib/ldap/idsconfig
```

It is strongly recommended that you BACKUP the directory server before running `idsconfig`.

Hit Ctrl-C at any time before the final confirmation to exit.

```
Do you wish to continue with server setup (y/n/h)? [n] y
Enter the JES Directory Server's hostname to setup: myserver
Enter the port number for iDS (h=help): [389]
Enter the directory manager DN: [cn=Directory Manager]
Enter passwd for cn=Directory Manager :
Enter the domainname to be served (h=help): [west.example.com]
Enter LDAP Base DN (h=help): [dc=west,dc=example,dc=com]
  Checking LDAP Base DN ...
  Validating LDAP Base DN and Suffix ...
  sasl/GSSAPI is not supported by this LDAP server

Enter the profile name (h=help): [default] WestUserProfile-new
Default server list (h=help): [192.168.0.1]
.
.
.
Do you want to enable shadow update (y/n/h)? [n] y
```

Summary of Configuration

```

1 Domain to serve           : west.example.com
2 Base DN to setup         : dc=west,dc=example,dc=com
   Suffix to create        : dc=west,dc=example,dc=com
3 Profile name to create   : WestUserProfile-new
.
.
.
19 Enable shadow update    : TRUE
.
.
.
Enter DN for the administrator: [cn=admin,ou=profile,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com]
Enter passwd for the administrator:
Re-enter passwd:

WARNING: About to start committing changes. (y=continue, n=EXIT) y

1. Changed timelimit to -1 in cn=config.
2. Changed sizelimit to -1 in cn=config.
.
.
.
11. ACI for dc=test1,dc=mpklab,dc=sfbay,dc=sun,dc=com modified to
    disable self modify.
.
.
.
15. Give cn=admin,ou=profile,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com write permission for shadow.
...

```

## Migrating Your Sun Java System Directory Server

Schema changes were implemented between the release of Sun Java System Directory Server 5.1 (formerly Sun ONE Directory Server) and the release of Sun Java System Directory Server 5.2. The `ldapaddent` command now adds `objectclass: device` to the entries of `ethers/bootparams`. Therefore, if you choose to use the LDAP commands to migrate directory data from Sun Java System Directory Server 5.1 to 5.2, you must use `ldapaddent -d` to export data and `ldapaddent` to import data. Otherwise, if you use the Sun Java System Directory Server tools `db2ldif` and `ldif2db` to migrate data, you must apply Sun Java System Directory Server 5.2 with all patches before migrating the data, or the data import could fail.

For information about configuring the Sun Java System Directory Server 5.2, see the Sun Java System Directory Server documentation, that is included with the Sun Java Enterprise System.

## Setting Up LDAP Clients (Tasks)

---

This chapter describes how to set up a Solaris LDAP naming services client. This chapter covers the following topics:

- “Prerequisites to LDAP Client Setup” on page 187
- “LDAP and the Service Management Facility” on page 188
- “Initializing an LDAP Client” on page 189
- “Retrieving LDAP Naming Services Information” on page 199
- “Customizing the LDAP Client Environment” on page 200

### Prerequisites to LDAP Client Setup

In order for a Solaris client to use LDAP as a naming service the following needs to be in place.

- The client's domain name must be served by the LDAP server
- The `nsswitch.conf` file needs to point to LDAP for the required services
- The client needs to be configured with all the given parameters that define its behavior
- `ldap_cachemgr` needs to be running on the client
- At least one server for which a client is configured must be up and running

The `ldapclient` utility is the key to setting up an LDAP client, as it performs all of the above steps, except for starting the server. The rest of this chapter will show examples of how to use the `ldapclient` utility to set up an LDAP client and use the various other LDAP utilities to get information about, and check the status of, an LDAP client.

# LDAP and the Service Management Facility

The LDAP client service is managed by using the Service Management Facility. For an overview of SMF, refer to [Chapter 17, “Managing Services \(Overview\)”](#) in *System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*. Also refer to the `svcadm(1M)` and `svcs(1)` man pages for more details.

- Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or restarting, can be performed by using the `svcadm` command.

---

**Tip** – Temporarily disabling a service by using the `-t` option provides some protection for the service configuration. If the service is disabled with the `-t` option, the original settings would be restored for the service after a reboot. If the service is disabled without `-t`, the service will remain disabled after reboot.

---

- The Fault Managed Resource Identifier (FMRI) for the LDAP client service is `svc:/network/ldap/client:<instance>`.
- You can query the status of the LDAP client and `ldap_cachemgr` by using the `svcs` command.
  - Example of `svcs` command and output.

```
# svcs \*ldap\*
STATE      STIME      FMRI
online     15:43:46   svc:/network/ldap/client:default
```

- Example of `svcs -l` command and output. To get the output shown below, you must use the instance name in the FMRI.

```
# svcs -l network/ldap/client:default
fmri       svc:/network/ldap/client:default
enabled    true
state      online
next_state none
restarter  svc:/system/svc/restarter:default
contract_id 1598
dependency require_all/none file:///localhost/var/ldap/ldap_client_file (-)
dependency require_all/none svc:/network/initial (online)
dependency require_all/none svc:/system/filesystem/minimal (online)
```

- You can check a daemon's presence by using the `ps` command.

```
# ps -e | grep slapd
root 23320    1  0   Aug 27 ?        16:30 ./ns-slapd -D \
/usr/iplanet/ds5/slapd-lastrev -i /usr/iplanet/ds5/slapd-lastrev/
root 25367 25353    0 15:35:19 pts/1    0:00 grep slapd
```

---

**Note** – Do not use the `-f` option with `ps` because this option attempts to translate user IDs to names, which causes more naming service lookups that might not succeed.

---

## Initializing an LDAP Client

`ldapclient(1M)` is a utility used to set up LDAP clients in the Solaris system. `ldapclient` assumes the server has already been configured with the appropriate client profiles. You must install and configure the server with the appropriate profiles before you can set up clients.

---

**Note** – The Solaris OS does not support a configuration in which an NIS client and a native LDAP client co-exist on the same client system.

---

There are two main ways to set up a client by using `ldapclient`.

- *Profile*

At a minimum, you need to specify the server address containing the profile and domain you want to use. If no profile is specified, then the “default” profile is assumed. The server will provide the rest of the required information, except for proxy and certificate database information. If a client's credential level is proxy or proxy anonymous, you must supply the proxy bind DN and password. See “[Assigning Client Credential Levels](#)” on page 147 for more information.

To enable shadow data update, you must provide the admin credential (`adminDN` plus `adminPassword`).

- *Manual*

You configure the profile on the client itself, which means that you define all parameters from the command line. Thus, the profile information is stored in cache files and is never refreshed by the server.

---

**Note** – Though you can manually configure clients, it is not recommended. Using the configuration profiles decreases the complexity and cost of managing clients.

---

## Using Profiles to Initialize a Client

### ▼ How to Initialize a Client Using Profiles

#### 1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role.

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control \(Tasks\),” in \*System Administration Guide: Security Services\*](#).

#### 2 Run `ldapclient` with `init`.

```
# ldapclient init \  
-a profileName=new \  
-a domainName=west.example.com 192.168.0.1  
System successfully configured
```

## Using Per-User Credentials

---

**Note** – Do not edit either of the client configuration files directly. Use the `ldapclient` command to create or modify the content of these files.

---

### ▼ How to Initialize a Client Using Per-User Credentials

#### Before You Begin

Before you set up a client with per-user credentials the following items must already be configured:

- One or more Kerberos KDC servers must be configured and running.
- DNS, client access to a DNS server, and at least one DNS server, must be configured and running.
- Kerberos on the client machine must be configured and enabled.
- A Kerberos client installation profile must exist. Such a profile might be:

```
# cat /usr/tmp/krb5.profile  
REALM SPARKS.COM  
KDC kdc.example.com  
ADMIN super/admin  
FILEPATH /usr/tmp/krb5.conf  
NFS 1  
DNSLOOKUP none
```

- The LDAP server must be installed and configured to support the `sasl/GSSAPI`.
- Appropriate identity mapping configurations must exist.
- Kerberos host principals for the directory server and the KDC must be set up in the KDC.

- `idsconfig` must have been run on the directory server DIT to be used.
- An appropriate per-user `gssapi` profile (such as `gssapi_EXAMPLE.COM`) must have been created.

An illustration of a per-user profile in `idsconfig` is shown in the following partial example:

```
# /usr/lib/ldap/idsconfig
Do you wish to continue with server setup (y/n/h)? [n] y
Enter the iPlanet Directory Server's (iDS) hostname to setup: kdc.example.com
Enter the port number for iDS (h=help): [389] <Enter your port>
Enter the directory manager DN: [cn=Directory Manager] <Enter your DN>
Enter passwd for cn=Directory Manager : <Enter your password>
Enter the domainname to be served (h=help): [example.com] <Enter your domain>
Enter LDAP Base DN (h=help): [dc=example,dc=com] <Enter your DN>
GSSAPI is supported. Do you want to set up gssapi:(y/n) [n] y
Enter Kerberos Realm: [EXAMPLE.COM] EXAMPLE.COM
```

---

**Note** – In addition, for a `gssapi` profile, you must supply a credential level of 4 `self` and the authentication method of 6 `sasl/GSSAPI`.

---

- The necessary user principals must exist in the Key Distribution Center (KDC).
- On the client machine, Kerberos must be initialized using the client profile with a command such as:

```
# /usr/sbin/kclient -p /usr/tmp/krb5.profile
```

- `/etc/nsswitch.conf` must be configured to use `dns` for `hosts` and `ipnodes`. Modify this file with an editor as necessary, as in the following:

```
host: files dns
ipnodes: files dns
```

- `/etc/resolv.conf` must be configured and the `dns` service must be running. See the DNS chapters in this document for details.
- The directory server DIT must be pre-loaded with (at a minimum) the users of this client machine, the client host and necessary `auto_home` LDAP entries. See other sections of this manual for details on how to add entries using `ldapaddent`.

## 1 Run `ldapclient init` to initialize the client by using the `gssapi` profile:

```
# /usr/sbin/ldapclient init -a profilename=gssapi_SPARKS.COM -a \
domainname=example.com 9.9.9.50
```

## 2 Try to log in as a user:

Run `kinit -p user`.

Run `ldaplist -l passwd user` in user's login session and you should see “userpassword.”

But `ldaplist -l passwd bar` can get the entry without `userpassword`. By default root can still see `userpassword` of everybody.

## More Information Notes About Using Per-User Credentials

- If the syslog has messages: `libldap: Status: 7 Mesg: openConnection: GSSAPI bind failed - 82 Local error`, it is likely that Kerberos is not initialized or its ticket is expired. Run `klist` to browse it. Run `kinit -p foo` or `kinit -R -p foo` and try again.
- If you want to, you can add `pam_krb5.so.1` to `/etc/pam.conf` so it will automatically `kinit` when you log in.
- For example:
 

```
login    auth optional pam_krb5.so.1
rlogin  auth optional pam_krb5.so.1
other   auth optional pam_krb5.so.1
```
- If a user is kinited and the syslog message indicates `Invalid credential`, then the problem could be the host entry (root) or user entry is not in LDAP directory or mapping rules are not correct.
- When `ldapclient init` is executed, it makes some checks if the LDAP profile contains `self/sasl/GSSAPI` configuration. If it fails at `/etc/nsswitch.ldap` check, then the usual reason is that `dns` was not added to `host: and ipnodes:`.
- If it fails because the DNS client not enabled, run `svcs -l dns/client` to see if `/etc/resolv.conf` is missing or it is just disabled. Run `svcadm enable dns/client` to enable it.
- If the check fails because of `sasl/GSSAPI bind`, check `syslog` to find out what went wrong.

See other references in this guide and in the [System Administration Guide: Security Services](#) for details.

## Using Proxy Credentials

### ▼ How to Initialize a Client Using Proxy Credentials

---

**Note** – Do not edit either of the client configuration files directly. Use `ldapclient` to create or modify the content of these files.

---

#### 1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role.

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control \(Tasks\),”](#) in [System Administration Guide: Security Services](#).



**2 Run ldapclient (defining proxy values).**

```
# ldapclient init \
-a proxyDN=cn=proxyagent,ou=profile,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com \
-a domainName=west.example.com \
-a profileName=pit1 \
-a proxyPassword=test1234 192.168.0.1
System successfully configured
```

The `-a proxyDN` and `-a proxyPassword` are *required* if the profile to be used is set up for proxy. As the credentials are not stored in the profile saved on the server, you must supply the information when you initialize the client. This method is more secure than the older method of storing the proxy credentials on the server.

The proxy information is used to create `/var/ldap/ldap_client_cred`. The rest of the information is put in `/var/ldap/ldap_client_file`.

## Enabling Shadow Updating in LDAP

### ▼ How to Initialize a Client to Enable the Updating of Shadow Data

**1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role.**

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control \(Tasks\),” in \*System Administration Guide: Security Services\*](#).

**2 To set the enableShadowUpdate switch and define the admin credential, run the ldapclient command.**

- To update an already running client, run this command:

```
# ldapclient mod -a enableShadowUpdate=TRUE \
-a adminDN=cn=admin,ou=profile,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com \
-a adminPassword=admin-password
System successfully configured
```

- To initialize a client, run this command:

```
# ldapclient init \
-a adminDN=cn=admin,ou=profile,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com \
-a adminPassword=admin-password
-a domainName=west.example.com \
-a profileName=WestUserProfile \
-a proxyDN=cn=proxyagent,ou=profile,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com \
-a proxyPassword=i<proxy_password> \
192.168.0.1
System successfully configured
```

**3 To verify the configuration, display the contents of the `/var/ldap/ldap_client_cred` file.**

The output should contain lines similar to the following:

```
# cat /var/ldap/ldap_client_cred

NS_LDAP_BINDDN= cn=proxyagent,ou=profile,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com
NS_LDAP_BINDPASSWD= {NS1}4a3788f8eb85de11
NS_LDAP_ENABLE_SHADOW_UPDATE= TRUE
NS_LDAP_ADMIN_BINDDN= cn=admin,ou=profile,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com
NS_LDAP_ADMIN_BINDPASSWD= {NS1}4a3788f8c053434f
```

## Initializing a Client Manually

Superusers, or administrators with an equivalent role, can perform manual client configurations. However, many of the checks are bypassed during the process, so it is relatively easy to misconfigure your system. In addition, you must change settings *on every machine*, instead of in one central place, as is done when using profiles.

### ▼ How to Initialize a Client Manually

**1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role.**

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control \(Tasks\),” in \*System Administration Guide: Security Services\*](#).

**2 Use `ldapclient manual` to initialize the client.**

```
# ldapclient manual \
-a domainName=dc=west.example.com \
-a credentialLevel=proxy \
-a defaultSearchBase=dc=west,dc=example,dc=com \
-a proxyDN=cn=proxyagent,ou=profile,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com \
-a proxyPassword=testtest 192.168.0.1
```

**3 Use `ldapclient list` to verify.**

```
NS_LDAP_FILE_VERSION= 2.0
NS_LDAP_BINDDN= cn=proxyagent,ou=profile,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com
NS_LDAP_BINDPASSWD= {NS1}4a3788e8c053424f
NS_LDAP_SERVERS= 192.168.0.1
NS_LDAP_SEARCH_BASEDN= dc=west,dc=example,dc=com
NS_LDAP_CREDENTIAL_LEVEL= proxy
```

# Modifying a Manual Client Configuration

## ▼ How to Modify a Manual Configuration

### 1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role.

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control \(Tasks\),”](#) in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

### 2 Use the `ldapclient mod` command to change the authentication method to `simple`.

```
# ldapclient mod -a authenticationMethod=simple
```

### 3 Use `ldapclient list` to verify the change was made.

```
# ldapclient list
NS_LDAP_FILE_VERSION= 2.0
NS_LDAP_BINDDN= cn=proxyagent,ou=profile,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com
NS_LDAP_BINDPASSWD= {NS1}4a3788e8c053424f
NS_LDAP_SERVERS= 192.168.0.1
NS_LDAP_SEARCH_BASEDN= dc=west,dc=example,dc=com
NS_LDAP_AUTH= simple
NS_LDAP_CREDENTIAL_LEVEL= proxy
```

## Troubleshooting

You cannot change some attributes of an LDAP client configuration by using the `mod` subcommand. For example, you cannot change the `profileName` and `profileTTL` attributes. To change these attributes, create a new profile by using the `ldapclient init` command, as described in [“Using Profiles to Initialize a Client”](#) on page 190. Or, run the `ldapclient manual` command, as described in [“Initializing a Client Manually”](#) on page 194.

# Uninitializing a Client

`ldapclient uninit` restores the client name service to what it was prior to the most recent `init`, `modify`, or `manual` operation. In other words, it performs an “undo” on the last step taken. For example, if the client was configured to use `profile1` and was then changed to use `profile2`, using `ldapclient uninit` would revert the client back to using `profile1`.

## ▼ How to Uninitialize a Client

### 1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role.

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control \(Tasks\),”](#) in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

**2 Use ldapclient uninit.**

```
# ldapclient uninit
System successfully recovered
```

## Setting Up TLS Security

---

**Note** – The security database files must be readable by everyone. Do not include any private keys in the key3.db.

---

If using TLS, the necessary security databases must be installed. In particular, the certificate and key database files are needed. For example, if you adopt an older database format from Netscape Communicator, two files, cert7.db and key3.db, are required. Or, if you use a newer database format from Mozilla, three files, cert8.db, key3.db and secmod.db are needed. The cert7.db or cert8.db file contains trusted certificates. The key3.db file contains the client's keys. Even if the LDAP naming service client does not use client keys, this file must be present. The secmod.db file contains the security modules such as PKCS#11 module. This file is not required if the older format is used.

**Note** – Before running ldapclient, you should set up and install the needed security database files described in this section.

---

See the section about configuring LDAP clients to use SSL in the “Managing SSL” chapter of the Administrator's Guide for the version of Sun Java System Directory Server you are using. For information on how to create and manage these files. Once configured, these files must be stored in the location expected by the LDAP naming services client. The attribute certificatePath is used to determine this location. This is by default /var/ldap.

For example, after setting up the necessary cert7.db and key3.db files using Netscape Communicator™, copy the files to the default location.

```
# cp $HOME/.netscape/cert7.db /var/ldap
# cp $HOME/.netscape/key3.db /var/ldap
```

Next, give everyone read access.

```
# chmod 444 /var/ldap/cert7.db
# chmod 444 /var/ldap/key3.db
```

---

**Note** – While Netscape manages the `cert7.db` and `key3.db` files in the `$HOME/.netscape` directory, Mozilla has its `cert8.db`, `key3.db` and `secmod.db` files managed in a sub-directory under `$HOME/.mozilla`. Copies of these security databases must be stored on a local file system if you are using them for an LDAP naming services client.

---

## Configuring PAM

`pam_ldap` is one authentication and account management PAM module option for LDAP. See the [pam\\_ldap\(5\)](#) man page for more information about the features currently supported with `pam_ldap`.

If you have selected both the per-user mode and the self credentials option, then you must also enable the PAM Kerberos `pam_krb5(5)` pam modules. See [pam\\_krb5\(5\)](#) and the *System Administration Guide: Security Services* documentation for further details.

### Configuring PAM to Use UNIX policy

To configure PAM to use UNIX policy, follow the sample in “[Example pam.conf File for pam\\_ldap](#)” on page 213. Add the lines that contain `pam_ldap.so.1` to the client's `/etc/pam.conf` file. For details, see the [pam.conf\(4\)](#) man page.

### Configuring PAM to Use LDAP server\_policy

To configure PAM to use LDAP `server_policy`, follow the sample in “[Example pam.conf file for pam\\_ldap Configured for Account Management](#)” on page 215. Add the lines that contain `pam_ldap.so.1` to the client's `/etc/pam.conf` file. In addition, if any PAM module in the sample `pam.conf` file specifies the binding flag and the `server_policy` option, use the same flag and option for the corresponding module in the client's `/etc/pam.conf` file. Also, add the `server_policy` option to the line that contains the service module `pam_authok_store.so.1`.

**Note** – Previously, if you enabled `pam_ldap` account management, all users needed to provide a login password for authentication any time they logged in to the system. Therefore, nonpassword-based logins using tools such as `rsh`, `rlogin`, or `ssh` would fail.

Now, however, `pam_ldap(5)`, when used with Sun Java System Directory Servers DS5.2p4 and newer releases, enables users to log in with `rsh`, `rlogin`, `rcp` and `ssh` without giving a password.

`pam_ldap(5)` is now modified to perform account management and retrieve the account status of users without authenticating to Directory Server as the user logging in. The new control to this on Directory Server is 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.9.5.8, which is enabled by default.

To modify this control for other than default, add Access Control Instructions (ACI) on Directory Server:

```
dn: oid=1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.9.5.8,cn=features,cn=config
objectClass: top
objectClass: directoryServerFeature
oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.9.5.8
cn:Password Policy Account Usable Request Control
aci: (targetattr != "aci")(version 3.0; acl "Account Usable";
    allow (read, search, compare, proxy)
    (groupdn = "ldap:///cn=Administrators,cn=config");)
creatorsName: cn=server,cn=plugins,cn=config
modifiersName: cn=server,cn=plugins,cn=config
```

- **The binding control flag**  
Using the binding control flag allows a local password override of a remote (LDAP) password. For example, if a user account is found on both the local files and the LDAP namespace, the password associated with the local account takes precedence over the remote password. Thus, if the local password expires, authentication fails even if the remote LDAP password is still valid.
- **The `server_policy` option**  
The `server_policy` option instructs `pam_unix_auth`, `pam_unix_account`, and `pam_passwd_auth` to ignore a user found in the LDAP namespace and to allow `pam_ldap` to perform authentication or account validation. In the case of `pam_authok_store`, a new password is passed to the LDAP server without encryption. The password is thereby stored in the directory according to the password encryption scheme configured on the server. For more information, see [pam.conf\(4\)](#) and [pam\\_ldap\(5\)](#).

---

# Retrieving LDAP Naming Services Information

You can retrieve information about LDAP naming services by using the `ldaplist` utility. This LDAP utility lists the naming information from the LDAP servers in LDIF format. It can be useful for troubleshooting. See [ldaplist\(1\)](#) for further information.

## Listing All LDAP Containers

`ldaplist` displays its output with a blank line separating records, which is helpful for big multiline records.

---

**Note** – The output of `ldaplist` depends upon the client configuration. For example, if the value of `ns_ldap_search` is `sub` rather than `one`, `ldaplist` lists all the entries under the current search `baseDN`.

---

The following is an example of `ldaplist` output.

```
# ldaplist
dn: ou=people,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com

dn: ou=group,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com

dn: ou=rpc,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com

dn: ou=protocols,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com

dn: ou=networks,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com

dn: ou=netgroup,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com

dn: ou=aliases,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com

dn: ou=hosts,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com

dn: ou=services,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com

dn: ou=ethers,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com

dn: ou=profile,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com

dn: automountmap=auto_home,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com

dn: automountmap=auto_direct,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com
```

```
dn: automountmap=auto_master,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com
```

```
dn: automountmap=auto_shared,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com
```

## Listing All User Entry Attributes

To list specific information such as a user's passwd entry, use `getent` as follows:

```
# getent passwd user1
user1::30641:10:Joe Q. User:/home/user1:/bin/csh
```

If you want to list all attributes, use `ldaplist` with the `-l` option.

```
# ldaplist -l passwd user1dn: uid=user1,ou=People,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com
uid: user1
cn: user1
uidNumber: 30641
gidNumber: 10
gecos: Joe Q. User
homeDirectory: /home/user1
loginShell: /bin/csh
objectClass: top
objectClass: shadowAccount
objectClass: account
objectClass: posixAccount
shadowLastChange: 6445
```

## Customizing the LDAP Client Environment

The following sections describe how you can customize the client environment.

You can change any of the services, but be careful, because if the data is not populated on the server for the service specified, things will stop working. Also, in some cases files may not be set up by default.

## Modifying the `nsswitch.conf` File for LDAP

You can modify your `/etc/nsswitch.conf` file to customize where each service gets its information. The default settings are stored in `/etc/nsswitch.ldap` and `ldapclient` uses this file to create your `/etc/nsswitch.conf` file when the client is initialized.



## Enabling DNS With LDAP

If you want to enable DNS by setting up a `/etc/resolv.conf` file, add DNS to your hosts lines as shown below.

```
hosts:      ldap dns [NOTFOUND=return] files
```

The recommended configuration is:

```
hosts: files dns
```

```
ipnodes: files dns
```

If per-user authentication is used, the sasl/GSSAPI and Kerberos mechanisms expect the dns naming service to be configured and enabled. See the chapters on DNS in this administration guide for further details.



# LDAP Troubleshooting (Reference)

---

This chapter describes configuration problems and suggests solutions for resolving them.

---

**Note** – The LDAP service is managed by the Service Management Facility. Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or restarting, can be performed by using the `svcadm` command. See “LDAP and the Service Management Facility” on page 188 for more information about using the Facility with LDAP. For an overview of the Facility, refer to Chapter 17, “Managing Services (Overview),” in *System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*. Also refer to the `svcadm(1M)` and `svcs(1)` man pages for more details.

---

## Monitoring LDAP Client Status

The following sections show various commands to help determine the state of the LDAP client environment. Also see the man pages for additional information about the options that can be used.

For an overview of the Service Management Facility, refer to Chapter 17, “Managing Services (Overview),” in *System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*. Also refer to the `svcadm(1M)` and `svcs(1)` man pages for more details.

## Verifying `ldap_cachemgr` Is Running

The `ldap_cachemgr` daemon must be running and functioning correctly at all times. Otherwise, the system doesn't work. When you start the LDAP client, the client starts `ldap_cachemgr` daemon automatically. So, if the `ldap_cachemgr` is not running, the LDAP client will be disabled. Following are two methods for determining if the LDAP client is online.

- Use the `svcs` command.

```
# svcs \*ldap\  
STATE          STIME          FMRI
```

```
disabled      Aug_24   svc:/network/ldap/client:default
```

or

```
# svcs -l network/ldap/client:default
fmri          svc:/network/ldap/client:default
enabled       true
state         online
next_state    none
restarter     svc:/system/svc/restarter:default
contract_id   1598
dependency    require_all/none file://localhost/var/ldap/ldap_client_file (-)
dependency    require_all/none svc:/network/initial (online)
dependency    require_all/none svc:/system/filesystem/minimal (online)
```

- Pass the `-g` option to `ldap_cachemgr`.

This option provides more extensive status information, which is useful when you diagnose a problem.

```
# /usr/lib/ldap/ldap_cachemgr -g
cachemgr configuration:
server debug level          0
server log file "/var/ldap/cachemgr.log"
number of calls to ldapcachemgr      19

cachemgr cache data statistics:
Configuration refresh information:
  Previous refresh time: 2001/11/16 18:33:28
  Next refresh time:    2001/11/16 18:43:28
Server information:
  Previous refresh time: 2001/11/16 18:33:28
  Next refresh time:    2001/11/16 18:36:08
server: 192.168.0.0, status: UP
server: 192.168.0.1, status: ERROR
  error message: Can't connect to the LDAP server
Cache data information:
  Maximum cache entries:      256
  Number of cache entries:    2
```

For more information about the `ldap_cachemgr` daemon, see the [ldap\\_cachemgr\(1M\)](#) man page.

## Checking the Current Profile Information

Become superuser or assume an equivalent role, and run `ldapclient` with the `list` option.

```
# ldapclient list
NS_LDAP_FILE_VERSION= 2.0
NS_LDAP_BINDDN= cn=proxyagent,ou=profile,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com
```

```

NS_LDAP_BINDPASSWD= {NS1}4a3788e8c053424f
NS_LDAP_SERVERS= 192.168.0.1, 192.168.0.10
NS_LDAP_SEARCH_BASEDN= dc=west,dc=example,dc=com
NS_LDAP_AUTH= simple
NS_LDAP_SEARCH_REF= TRUE
NS_LDAP_SEARCH_SCOPE= one
NS_LDAP_SEARCH_TIME= 30
NS_LDAP_SERVER_PREF= 192.168.0.1
NS_LDAP_PROFILE= pit1
NS_LDAP_CREDENTIAL_LEVEL= proxy
NS_LDAP_SERVICE_SEARCH_DESC= passwd:ou=people,?sub
NS_LDAP_SERVICE_SEARCH_DESC= group:ou=group,dc=west,dc=example,dc=com?one
NS_LDAP_BIND_TIME= 5

```

Currently the `/var/ldap` files are in ASCII format. Because the files could change to binary at some time, concatenating the files would cause problems. `ldapclient list` is the supported method for accessing this information. See the [ldapclient\(1M\)](#) man page for more information.

## Verifying Basic Client-Server Communication

The best way to show that your client is talking to the LDAP server is with the `ldaplist` command. Using `ldaplist` with no arguments dumps all the containers on the server. This works as long as the containers exist, and do not have to be populated. See the [ldaplist\(1\)](#) man page for more information.

If the first step works, you can try `ldaplist passwd username` or `ldaplist hosts hostname` but if they contain lots of data you might want to pick a less populated service, or pipe them to head or more.

## Checking Server Data From a Non-Client Machine

Most of the commands in the previous sections assume you already have created an LDAP client. If you have not created a client and want to check the data on the server, use the `ldapsearch` command. The following example lists all of the containers.

```
# ldapsearch -h server1 -b "dc=west,dc=example,dc=com" -s one "objectclass=*"

```

In Solaris 9 and earlier releases, the `ldapsearch` command, by default, produced output in a nonstandard textual representation. The default output for `ldapsearch` in later Solaris releases is the industry standardized LDIF format that is defined by RFC-2849. All versions of `ldapsearch` can output LDIF format using the `-L` option.

# LDAP Configuration Problems and Solutions

The following sections describe LDAP configuration problems and suggests solutions to the problems.

## Unresolved Hostname

The Solaris platform LDAP client back end returns fully qualified host names for host lookups, such as host names returned by `gethostbyname()` and `getaddrinfo()`. If the name stored is qualified, that is, contains at least one dot, the client returns the name as is. For example, if the name stored is `hostB.eng`, the returned name is `hostB.eng`.

If the name stored in the LDAP directory is not qualified (it does not contain a dot), the client back end appends the domain part to the name. For example, if the name stored is `hostA`, the returned name is `hostA.domainname`.

## Unable to Reach Systems in the LDAP Domain Remotely

If the DNS domain name is different from the LDAP domain name, then the LDAP naming service cannot be used to serve host names unless the host names are stored fully qualified.

## Login Does Not Work

LDAP clients use the PAM modules for user authentication during login. When using the standard UNIX PAM module, the password is read from the server and checked on the client side. This can fail due to one of the following reasons:

1. `ldap` is not used by the `passwd` service in the `/etc/nsswitch.conf` file.
2. The user's `userPassword` attribute on the server list is not readable by the proxy agent. You need to allow at least the proxy agent to read the password because the proxy agent returns it to the client for comparison. `pam_ldap` does not require read access to the password.
3. The proxy agent might not have the correct password.
4. The entry does not have the `shadowAccount` object class.
5. No password is defined for the user.

When you use `ldapaddent`, you must use the `-p` option to ensure that the password is added to the user entry. If you use `ldapaddent` without the `-p` option, the user's password is not stored in the directory unless you also add the `/etc/shadow` file by using `ldapaddent`.

6. No LDAP servers are reachable.

Check the status of the servers.

```
# /usr/lib/ldap/ldap_cachemgr -g
```

7. `pam.conf` is configured incorrectly.
8. The user is not defined in the LDAP namespace.
9. `NS_LDAP_CREDENTIAL_LEVEL` is set to `anonymous` for `pam_unix`, and `userPassword` is not available to anonymous users.
10. The password is not stored in crypt format.
11. If `pam_ldap` is configured to support account management, login failure could be the result of one of the following:
  - The user's password has expired.
  - The user's account is locked out due to too many failed login attempts.
  - The user's account has been deactivated by the administrator.
  - The user tried to log in using a nonpassword-based program, such as `rsh`, `rlogin`, `ssh`, or `sftp`.
12. If per-user authentication and `sasl/GSSAPI` are being used, then some component of Kerberos or the `pam_krb5` configuration is setup incorrectly. Refer to the [System Administration Guide: Security Services](#) for details on resolving these issues.

## Lookup Too Slow

The LDAP database relies on indexes to improve search performance. A major performance degradation occurs when indexes are improperly configured. The documentation includes a common set of attributes that should be indexed. You can also add your own indexes to improve performance at your site.

## ldapclient Cannot Bind to Server

`ldapclient` failed to initialize the client when using the `init` option with the `profileName` attribute specified. Possible reasons for failure include the following:

1. The incorrect domain name was specified on the command line.
2. The `nisDomain` attribute is not set in the DIT to represent the entry point for the specified client domain.
3. Access control information is not set up properly on the server, thus disallowing anonymous search in the LDAP database.
4. An incorrect server address passed to the `ldapclient` command. Use `ldapssearch` to verify the server address.

5. An incorrect profile name passed to the `ldapclient` command. Use `ldapsearch` to verify the profile name in the DIT.
6. Use snoop on the client's network interface to see what sort of traffic is going out, and determine to which server it is talking.

## Using `ldap_cachemgr` for Debugging

Using `ldap_cachemgr` with the `-g` option can be a useful way to debug, as you can view the current client configuration and statistics. For example,

```
# ldap_cachemgr -g
```

would print current configuration and statistics to standard output, including the status of all LDAP servers, as mentioned previously. Note that you do *not* need to become super user to execute this command.

## `ldapclient` Hangs During Setup

If the `ldapclient` command hangs, pressing Ctrl-C will exit after restoring the previous environment. If this happens, check with the server administrator to ensure that the server is running.

Also check the server list attributes in either the profile or from the command line and make sure that the server information is correct.



## LDAP General Reference (Reference)

---

This chapter covers the following topics.

1. “Blank Checklists” on page 209
2. “LDAP Upgrade Information” on page 210
3. “LDAP Commands” on page 212
4. “Example pam.conf File for pam\_ldap” on page 213
5. “Example pam\_conf file for pam\_ldap Configured for Account Management” on page 215
6. “IETF Schemas for LDAP” on page 217
7. “Directory User Agent Profile (DUAProfile) Schema” on page 224
8. “Solaris Schemas” on page 226
9. “Internet Print Protocol Information for LDAP” on page 228
10. “Generic Directory Server Requirements for LDAP” on page 238
11. “Default Filters Used by LDAP Naming Services” on page 238

## Blank Checklists

TABLE 14-1 Server Variable Definitions

Variable	Definition for _____ Network
Port number at which an instance of the directory server is installed (389)	
Name of server	
Replica server(s) (IP number:port number)	
Directory manager [dn: cn=directory manager]	
Domain name to be served	

TABLE 14-1 Server Variable Definitions (Continued)

Variable	Definition for _____ Network
Maximum time (in seconds) to process client requests before timing out	
Maximum number of entries returned for each search request	

TABLE 14-2 Client Profile Variable Definitions

Variable	Definition for _____ Network
Profile name	
Server list (defaults to the local subnet)	
Preferred server list (listed in order of which server to try first, second, and so on)	
Search scope (number of levels down through the directory tree. 'One' or 'Sub')	
Credential used to gain access to server. The default is anonymous	
Follow Referrals? ( a pointer to another server if the main server is unavailable) The default is no.	
Search time limit (in seconds, default 30) for waiting for server to return information.	
Bind time limit (in seconds, default 30) for contacting server. The default is seconds.	
Authentication method Default is none.	

## LDAP Upgrade Information

This section provides information to consider when upgrading from the Solaris 8 release to a Solaris 9 or later release.

### Compatibility

Clients configured on Solaris 9 or later Solaris software releases are fully compatible with directory servers set up to serve Solaris 8 clients, which only support version 1 profiles. However, to take advantage of newer features built into Solaris 9 and later releases, and to use the newer security model, you must use version 2 profiles.

Servers can serve a mix of both old and new clients. Clients see the same results from the server as long as schema mapping is not enabled and version 2 profiles are not configured to use special filters with the `serviceSearchDescriptors` attribute. Obviously if the server is not using the default schema, older clients cannot use that server as Solaris 8 clients cannot arbitrarily map nondefault schema.

## Running the `ldap_cachemgr` Daemon

Beginning with the Solaris 9 release, the `ldap_cachemgr` daemon *must* be running at all times. The daemon is *required* for the client to function properly. When you use the Service Management Facility's `svcadm` command to start the LDAP client, the `ldap_cachemgr` daemon is automatically invoked. See the [ldap\\_cachemgr\(1M\)](#) man page for more information.

## New automount Schema

Beginning with the Solaris 9 release, by default the Solaris software uses a new schema for automount entries. This new schema replaces the generic NIS map schema that Solaris 8 clients used. This means that if you set up a server with Solaris 9 or later software tools, Solaris 8 clients cannot see the automount entries. For sites where the server being set up is to serve both Solaris 8 and later Solaris software clients, a profile can be created to map the schema to the old one before adding automounter entries. This would ensure that [ldapaddent\(1M\)](#) adds the entries using the old schema. However, note that this would also mean that all clients based on Solaris 9 or later software must use a profile where the schema for automount is mapped.

You need to add the following mapping attributes to your profile for this mapping to take effect.

```
attributeMap:      automount:automountMapName=nisMapName
attributeMap:      automount:automountKey=cn
attributeMap:      automount:automountInformation=nisMapEntry
objectclassMap:    automount:automountMap=nisMap
objectclassMap:    automount:automount=nisObject
```

## pam\_ldap Changes

The Solaris 10 OS release introduced several changes to `pam_ldap`, identified in the following list. Also, see the [pam\\_ldap\(5\)](#) man page for more information.

- The previously supported `use_first_pass` and `try_first_pass` options are obsolete as of the Solaris 10 software release. These options are no longer needed, may safely be removed from `pam.conf`, and are silently ignored. They may be removed in a future release.
- Password prompting must be provided for by stacking `pam_authok_get` before `pam_ldap` in the authentication and password module stacks, and by including `pam_passwd_auth` in the `passwd` service auth stack.

- The previously supported password update function is replaced in this release by the previously recommended use of `pam_authtok_store` with the `server_policy` option.

An upgrade to this release will not automatically update the existing `pam.conf` file to reflect the above changes. If the existing `pam.conf` file contains a `pam_ldap` configuration, you will be notified after the upgrade by the `CLEANUP` file. You will need to examine the `pam.conf` file and modify it, as needed.

It is not possible to provide a clean automatic update for the changes listed above, primarily password prompting and password update, due to the relevance of other modules used in the same stack and also due to the existence of third party modules.

See [pam\\_passwd\\_auth\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_get\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_store\(5\)](#), and [pam.conf\(4\)](#) man pages for more information.

## LDAP Commands

There are two sets of LDAP-related commands in the Solaris system. One set is the general LDAP tools, which do not require the client to be configured with LDAP naming services. The second set uses the common LDAP configuration on the client and therefore can only be used if the client is configured to use LDAP as its naming service.

### General LDAP Tools

LDAP command line tools support a common set of options, including authentication and bind parameters. The following tools support a common text-based format for representing directory information called the LDAP Data Interchange Format (LDIF). These commands can be used to manipulate directory entries directly.

[ldapsearch\(1\)](#)  
[ldapmodify\(1\)](#)  
[ldapadd\(1\)](#)  
[ldapdelete\(1\)](#)

## LDAP Tools Requiring LDAP Naming Services

TABLE 14-3 LDAP Tools

Tool	Function
<code>ldapaddent(1M)</code>	Used to create entries in LDAP containers from the corresponding <code>/etc</code> files. This tool allows populating the directory from files. For example, it reads <code>/etc/passwd</code> format file and populates <code>passwd</code> entries in the directory.
<code>ldaplist(1)</code>	Used to list contents of various services from the directory.
<code>idsconfig(1M)</code>	Used to set up Sun Java System Directory Server to serve LDAP naming service clients.

### Example pam.conf File for pam\_ldap

```
#
# Authentication management
#
# login service (explicit because of pam_dial_auth)
#
login    auth requisite      pam_authtok_get.so.1
login    auth required       pam_dhkeys.so.1
login    auth required       pam_dial_auth.so.1
login    auth required       pam_unix_cred.so.1
login    auth sufficient     pam_unix_auth.so.1
login    auth required       pam_ldap.so.1
#
# rlogin service (explicit because of pam_rhost_auth)
#
rlogin   auth sufficient     pam_rhosts_auth.so.1
rlogin   auth requisite     pam_authtok_get.so.1
rlogin   auth required       pam_dhkeys.so.1
rlogin   auth required       pam_unix_cred.so.1
rlogin   auth sufficient     pam_unix_auth.so.1
rlogin   auth required       pam_ldap.so.1
#
# rsh service (explicit because of pam_rhost_auth,
# and pam_unix_auth for meaningful pam_setcred)
#
rsh      auth sufficient     pam_rhosts_auth.so.1
rsh      auth required       pam_unix_cred.so.1
#
# PPP service (explicit because of pam_dial_auth)
#
ppp      auth requisite      pam_authtok_get.so.1
```

```
ppp    auth required      pam_dhkeys.so.1
ppp    auth required      pam_dial_auth.so.1
ppp    auth sufficient     pam_unix_auth.so.1
ppp    auth required      pam_ldap.so.1
#
# Default definitions for Authentication management
# Used when service name is not explicitly mentioned for authentication
#
other  auth requisite     pam_authtok_get.so.1
other  auth required      pam_dhkeys.so.1
other  auth required      pam_unix_cred.so.1
other  auth sufficient     pam_unix_auth.so.1
other  auth required      pam_ldap.so.1
#
# passwd command (explicit because of a different authentication module)
#
passwd auth sufficient     pam_passwd_auth.so.1
passwd auth required      pam_ldap.so.1
#
# cron service (explicit because of non-usage of pam_roles.so.1)
#
cron   account required   pam_unix_account.so.1
#
# Default definition for Account management
# Used when service name is not explicitly mentioned for account management
#
other  account requisite  pam_roles.so.1
other  account required   pam_unix_account.so.1
#
# Default definition for Session management
# Used when service name is not explicitly mentioned for session management
#
other  session required   pam_unix_session.so.1
#
# Default definition for Password management
# Used when service name is not explicitly mentioned for password management
#
other  password required  pam_dhkeys.so.1
other  password requisite pam_authtok_get.so.1
other  password requisite pam_authtok_check.so.1
other  password required  pam_authtok_store.so.1
#
# Support for Kerberos V5 authentication and example configurations can
# be found in the pam_krb5(5) man page under the "EXAMPLES" section.
#
```

## Example pam\_conf file for pam\_ldap Configured for Account Management

**Note** – Previously, if you enabled pam\_ldap account management, all users needed to provide a login password for authentication any time they logged in to the system. Therefore, nonpassword-based logins using tools such as rsh, rlogin, or ssh would fail.

Now, however, `pam_ldap(5)`, when used with Sun Java System Directory Servers DS5.2p4 and newer releases, enables users to log in with rsh, rlogin, rcp and ssh without giving a password.

`pam_ldap(5)` is now modified to perform account management and retrieve the account status of users without authenticating to Directory Server as the user logging in. The new control to this on Directory Server is 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.9.5.8, which is enabled by default.

To modify this control for other than default, add Access Control Instructions (ACI) on Directory Server:

```
dn: oid=1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.9.5.8,cn=features,cn=config
objectClass: top
objectClass: directoryServerFeature
oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.9.5.8
cn:Password Policy Account Usable Request Control
aci: (targetattr != "aci")(version 3.0; acl "Account Usable";
    allow (read, search, compare, proxy)
    (groupdn = "ldap:///cn=Administrators,cn=config");)
creatorsName: cn=server,cn=plugins,cn=config
modifiersName: cn=server,cn=plugins,cn=config
```

```
#
# Authentication management
#
# login service (explicit because of pam_dial_auth)
#
login  auth requisite      pam_authtok_get.so.1
login  auth required       pam_dhkeys.so.1
login  auth required       pam_unix_cred.so.1
login  auth required       pam_dial_auth.so.1
login  auth binding        pam_unix_auth.so.1 server_policy
login  auth required       pam_ldap.so.1
#
# rlogin service (explicit because of pam_rhost_auth)
#
rlogin auth sufficient     pam_rhosts_auth.so.1
rlogin auth requisite     pam_authtok_get.so.1
rlogin auth required      pam_dhkeys.so.1
```

```
rlogin  auth required      pam_unix_cred.so.1
rlogin  auth binding      pam_unix_auth.so.1 server_policy
rlogin  auth required      pam_ldap.so.1
#
# rsh service (explicit because of pam_rhost_auth,
# and pam_unix_auth for meaningful pam_setcred)
#
rsh     auth sufficient    pam_rhosts_auth.so.1
rsh     auth required      pam_unix_cred.so.1
rsh     auth binding      pam_unix_auth.so.1 server_policy
rsh     auth required      pam_ldap.so.1
#
# PPP service (explicit because of pam_dial_auth)
#
ppp     auth requisite     pam_authok_get.so.1
ppp     auth required      pam_dhkeys.so.1
ppp     auth required      pam_dial_auth.so.1
ppp     auth binding      pam_unix_auth.so.1 server_policy
ppp     auth required      pam_ldap.so.1
#
# Default definitions for Authentication management
# Used when service name is not explicitly mentioned for authentication
#
other   auth requisite     pam_authok_get.so.1
other   auth required      pam_dhkeys.so.1
other   auth required      pam_unix_cred.so.1
other   auth binding      pam_unix_auth.so.1 server_policy
other   auth required      pam_ldap.so.1
#
# passwd command (explicit because of a different authentication module)
#
passwd  auth binding      pam_passwd_auth.so.1 server_policy
passwd  auth required      pam_ldap.so.1
#
# cron service (explicit because of non-usage of pam_roles.so.1)
#
cron    account required    pam_unix_account.so.1
#
# Default definition for Account management
# Used when service name is not explicitly mentioned for account management
#
other   account requisite   pam_roles.so.1
other   account binding     pam_unix_account.so.1 server_policy
other   account required     pam_ldap.so.1
#
# Default definition for Session management
# Used when service name is not explicitly mentioned for session management
#
```



```

other session required pam_unix_session.so.1
#
# Default definition for Password management
# Used when service name is not explicitly mentioned for password management
#
other password required pam_dhkeys.so.1
other password requisite pam_authtok_get.so.1
other password requisite pam_authtok_check.so.1
other password required pam_authtok_store.so.1 server_policy
#
# Support for Kerberos V5 authentication and example configurations can
# be found in the pam_krb5(5) man page under the "EXAMPLES" section.
#

```

## IETF Schemas for LDAP

Schemas are definitions that describe what types of information can be stored as entries in a server's directory.

For a directory server to support Solaris LDAP naming clients, schemas defined in this chapter must be configured in the server unless schema is mapped using the schema mapping feature of the clients.

There are three required LDAP schemas defined by IETF: the RFC 2307 Network Information Service schema, the LDAP Mailgroups Internet draft, and the LDAP Internet Print Protocol (IPP) draft schema. To support the Naming Information Service, the definition of these schemas must be added to the directory server. The various RFCs can also be accessed on the IETF Web site <http://www.ietf.org>.

---

**Note** – Internet drafts are draft documents valid for a maximum of six months and might be updated, or rendered obsolete, by other documents at any time.

---

## RFC 2307 Network Information Service Schema

The LDAP servers must be configured to support the revised RFC 2307.

The nisSchema OID is 1.3.6.1.1. The RFC 2307 attributes are the following.

```

( nisSchema.1.0 NAME 'uidNumber'
DESC 'An integer uniquely identifying a user in an
      administrative domain'
EQUALITY integerMatch SYNTAX 'INTEGER' SINGLE-VALUE )

```

```
( nisSchema.1.1 NAME 'gidNumber'  
DESC 'An integer uniquely identifying a group in an  
administrative domain'  
EQUALITY integerMatch SYNTAX 'INTEGER' SINGLE-VALUE )
```

```
( nisSchema.1.2 NAME 'gecos'  
DESC 'The GECOS field; the common name'  
EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match  
SUBSTRINGS caseIgnoreIA5SubstringsMatch  
SYNTAX 'IA5String' SINGLE-VALUE )
```

```
( nisSchema.1.3 NAME 'homeDirectory'  
DESC 'The absolute path to the home directory'  
EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match  
SYNTAX 'IA5String' SINGLE-VALUE )
```

```
( nisSchema.1.4 NAME 'loginShell'  
DESC 'The path to the login shell'  
EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match  
SYNTAX 'IA5String' SINGLE-VALUE )
```

```
( nisSchema.1.5 NAME 'shadowLastChange'  
EQUALITY integerMatch  
SYNTAX 'INTEGER' SINGLE-VALUE )
```

```
( nisSchema.1.6 NAME 'shadowMin'  
EQUALITY integerMatch  
SYNTAX 'INTEGER' SINGLE-VALUE )
```

```
( nisSchema.1.7 NAME 'shadowMax'  
EQUALITY integerMatch  
SYNTAX 'INTEGER' SINGLE-VALUE )
```

```
( nisSchema.1.8 NAME 'shadowWarning'  
EQUALITY integerMatch  
SYNTAX 'INTEGER' SINGLE-VALUE )
```

```
( nisSchema.1.9 NAME 'shadowInactive'  
EQUALITY integerMatch  
SYNTAX 'INTEGER' SINGLE-VALUE )
```

```
( nisSchema.1.10 NAME 'shadowExpire'  
EQUALITY integerMatch  
SYNTAX 'INTEGER' SINGLE-VALUE )
```

```
( nisSchema.1.11 NAME 'shadowFlag'  
EQUALITY integerMatch  
SYNTAX 'INTEGER' SINGLE-VALUE )
```

```
( nisSchema.1.12 NAME 'memberUid'
EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
SUBSTRINGS caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
SYNTAX 'IA5String' )

( nisSchema.1.13 NAME 'memberNisNetgroup'
EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
SUBSTRINGS caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
SYNTAX 'IA5String' )

( nisSchema.1.14 NAME 'nisNetgroupTriple'
DESC 'Netgroup triple'
SYNTAX 'nisNetgroupTripleSyntax' )

( nisSchema.1.15 NAME 'ipServicePort'
EQUALITY integerMatch
SYNTAX 'INTEGER' SINGLE-VALUE )

( nisSchema.1.16 NAME 'ipServiceProtocol'
SUP name )

( nisSchema.1.17 NAME 'ipProtocolNumber'
EQUALITY integerMatch
SYNTAX 'INTEGER' SINGLE-VALUE )

( nisSchema.1.18 NAME 'oncRpcNumber'
EQUALITY integerMatch
SYNTAX 'INTEGER' SINGLE-VALUE )

( nisSchema.1.19 NAME 'ipHostNumber'
DESC 'IP address as a dotted decimal, eg. 192.168.1.1
      omitting leading zeros'
SUP name )

( nisSchema.1.20 NAME 'ipNetworkNumber'
DESC 'IP network as a dotted decimal, eg. 192.168,
      omitting leading zeros'
SUP name SINGLE-VALUE )

( nisSchema.1.21 NAME 'ipNetmaskNumber'
DESC 'IP netmask as a dotted decimal, eg. 255.255.255.0,
      omitting leading zeros'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match
SYNTAX 'IA5String{128}' SINGLE-VALUE )

( nisSchema.1.22 NAME 'macAddress'
DESC 'MAC address in maximal, colon separated hex
```

```
        notation, eg. 00:00:92:90:ee:e2'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match
SYNTAX 'IA5String{128}' )

( nisSchema.1.23 NAME 'bootParameter'
DESC 'rpc.bootparamd parameter'
SYNTAX 'bootParameterSyntax' )

( nisSchema.1.24 NAME 'bootFile'
DESC 'Boot image name'
EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
SYNTAX 'IA5String' )

( nisSchema.1.26 NAME 'nisMapName'
SUP name )

( nisSchema.1.27 NAME 'nisMapEntry'
EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
SUBSTRINGS caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
SYNTAX 'IA5String{1024}' SINGLE-VALUE )

( nisSchema.1.28 NAME 'nisPublicKey'
DESC 'NIS public key'
SYNTAX 'nisPublicKeySyntax' )

( nisSchema.1.29 NAME 'nisSecretKey'
DESC 'NIS secret key'
SYNTAX 'nisSecretKeySyntax' )

( nisSchema.1.30 NAME 'nisDomain'
DESC 'NIS domain'
SYNTAX 'IA5String' )

( nisSchema.1.31 NAME 'automountMapName'
DESC 'automount Map Name'
EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 SINGLE-VALUE )

( nisSchema.1.32 NAME 'automountKey'
DESC 'Automount Key value'
EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 SINGLE-VALUE )

( nisSchema.1.33 NAME 'automountInformation'
DESC 'Automount information'
EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
```

```
SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 SINGLE-VALUE )
```

The nisSchema OID is 1.3.6.1.1. The RFC 2307 objectClasses are the following.

```
( nisSchema.2.0 NAME 'posixAccount' SUP top AUXILIARY
  DESC 'Abstraction of an account with POSIX attributes'
  MUST ( cn $ uid $ uidNumber $ gidNumber $ homeDirectory )
  MAY ( userPassword $ loginShell $ gecos $ description ) )

( nisSchema.2.1 NAME 'shadowAccount' SUP top AUXILIARY
  DESC 'Additional attributes for shadow passwords'
  MUST uid
  MAY ( userPassword $ shadowLastChange $ shadowMin
        shadowMax $ shadowWarning $ shadowInactive $
        shadowExpire $ shadowFlag $ description ) )

( nisSchema.2.2 NAME 'posixGroup' SUP top STRUCTURAL
  DESC 'Abstraction of a group of accounts'
  MUST ( cn $ gidNumber )
  MAY ( userPassword $ memberUid $ description ) )

( nisSchema.2.3 NAME 'ipService' SUP top STRUCTURAL
  DESC 'Abstraction an Internet Protocol service.
        Maps an IP port and protocol (such as tcp or udp)
        to one or more names; the distinguished value of
        the cn attribute denotes the service's canonical
        name'
  MUST ( cn $ ipServicePort $ ipServiceProtocol )
  MAY ( description ) )

( nisSchema.2.4 NAME 'ipProtocol' SUP top STRUCTURAL
  DESC 'Abstraction of an IP protocol. Maps a protocol number
        to one or more names. The distinguished value of the cn
        attribute denotes the protocol's canonical name'
  MUST ( cn $ ipProtocolNumber )
  MAY description )

( nisSchema.2.5 NAME 'oncRpc' SUP top STRUCTURAL
  DESC 'Abstraction of an Open Network Computing (ONC)
        [RFC1057] Remote Procedure Call (RPC) binding.
        This class maps an ONC RPC number to a name.
        The distinguished value of the cn attribute denotes
        the RPC service's canonical name'
  MUST ( cn $ oncRpcNumber $ description )
  MAY description )

( nisSchema.2.6 NAME 'ipHost' SUP top AUXILIARY
```

```
DESC 'Abstraction of a host, an IP device. The distinguished
      value of the cn attribute denotes the host's canonical
      name. Device SHOULD be used as a structural class'
MUST ( cn $ ipHostNumber )
MAY ( l $ description $ manager $ userPassword ) )

( nisSchema.2.7 NAME 'ipNetwork' SUP top STRUCTURAL
  DESC 'Abstraction of a network. The distinguished value of
        the cn attribute denotes the network's canonical name'
  MUST ipNetworkNumber
  MAY ( cn $ ipNetmaskNumber $ l $ description $ manager ) )

( nisSchema.2.8 NAME 'nisNetgroup' SUP top STRUCTURAL
  DESC 'Abstraction of a netgroup. May refer to other netgroups'
  MUST cn
  MAY ( nisNetgroupTriple $ memberNisNetgroup $ description ) )

( nisSchema.2.9 NAME 'nisMap' SUP top STRUCTURAL
  DESC 'A generic abstraction of a NIS map'
  MUST nisMapName
  MAY description )

( nisSchema.2.10 NAME 'nisObject' SUP top STRUCTURAL
  DESC 'An entry in a NIS map'
  MUST ( cn $ nisMapEntry $ nisMapName )
  MAY description )

( nisSchema.2.11 NAME 'ieee802Device' SUP top AUXILIARY
  DESC 'A device with a MAC address; device SHOULD be
        used as a structural class'
  MAY macAddress )

( nisSchema.2.12 NAME 'bootableDevice' SUP top AUXILIARY
  DESC 'A device with boot parameters; device SHOULD be
        used as a structural class'
  MAY ( bootFile $ bootParameter ) )

( nisSchema.2.14 NAME 'nisKeyObject' SUP top AUXILIARY
  DESC 'An object with a public and secret key'
  MUST ( cn $ nisPublicKey $ nisSecretKey )
  MAY ( uidNumber $ description ) )

( nisSchema.2.15 NAME 'nisDomainObject' SUP top AUXILIARY
  DESC 'Associates a NIS domain with a naming context'
  MUST nisDomain )

( nisSchema.2.16 NAME 'automountMap' SUP top STRUCTURAL
  MUST ( automountMapName ) )
```

```

MAY description )

( nisSchema.2.17 NAME 'automount' SUP top STRUCTURAL
  DESC 'Automount information'
  MUST ( automountKey $ automountInformation )
  MAY description )

```

## Mail Alias Schema

Mail alias information uses the schema defined by the LDAP Mailgroups Internet draft, formerly known as the draft-steinback-ldap-mailgroups draft. Until a new schema becomes available, Solaris LDAP clients will continue to use this schema for mail alias information.

The original LDAP Mailgroups schema contains a large number of attributes and object classes. Only two attributes and a single object class are used by Solaris clients. These are listed below.

The mail alias Attributes are the following.

```

( 0.9.2342.19200300.100.1.3
  NAME 'mail'
  DESC 'RFC822 email address for this person'
  EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match
  SYNTAX 'IA5String(256)'
  SINGLE-VALUE )

( 2.16.840.1.113730.3.1.30
  NAME 'mgrpRFC822MailMember'
  DESC 'RFC822 mail address of email only member of group'
  EQUALITY CaseIgnoreIA5Match
  SYNTAX 'IA5String(256)' )

```

The mail alias objectClass is the following.

```

( 2.16.840.1.113730.3.2.4
  NAME 'mailGroup'
  SUP top
  STRUCTURAL
  MUST mail
  MAY ( cn $ mailAlternateAddress $ mailHost $ mailRequireAuth $
    mgrpAddHeader $ mgrpAllowedBroadcaster $ mgrpAllowedDomain $
    mgrpApprovePassword $ mgrpBroadcasterModeration $ mgrpDeliverTo $
    mgrpErrorsTo $ mgrpModerator $ mgrpMsgMaxSize $
    mgrpMsgRejectAction $ mgrpMsgRejectText $ mgrpNoMatchAddrs $
    mgrpRemoveHeader $ mgrpRFC822MailMember ))

```

# Directory User Agent Profile (DUAPProfile) Schema

The DUACnfSchemaOID is 1.3.6.1.4.1.11.1.3.1.

```
DESC 'Default LDAP server host address used by a DUA'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15
SINGLE-VALUE )

( DUACnfSchemaOID.1.1 NAME 'defaultSearchBase'
DESC 'Default LDAP base DN used by a DUA'
EQUALITY distinguishedNameMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.12
SINGLE-VALUE )

( DUACnfSchemaOID.1.2 NAME 'preferredServerList'
DESC 'Preferred LDAP server host addresses to be used by a
DUA'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15
SINGLE-VALUE )

( DUACnfSchemaOID.1.3 NAME 'searchTimeLimit'
DESC 'Maximum time in seconds a DUA should allow for a
search to complete'
EQUALITY integerMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.27
SINGLE-VALUE )

( DUACnfSchemaOID.1.4 NAME 'bindTimeLimit'
DESC 'Maximum time in seconds a DUA should allow for the
bind operation to complete'
EQUALITY integerMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.27
SINGLE-VALUE )

( DUACnfSchemaOID.1.5 NAME 'followReferrals'
DESC 'Tells DUA if it should follow referrals
returned by a DSA search result'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.7
SINGLE-VALUE )

( DUACnfSchemaOID.1.6 NAME 'authenticationMethod'
DESC 'A keystore which identifies the type of
authentication method used to contact the DSA'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15
```



```

SINGLE-VALUE )

( DUAConfSchemaOID.1.7 NAME 'profileTTL'
  DESC 'Time to live, in seconds, before a client DUA
  should re-read this configuration profile'
  'serviceSearchDescriptor'
  DESC 'LDAP search descriptor list used by a DUA'
  EQUALITY caseExactMatch
  SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )

( DUAConfSchemaOID.1.9 NAME 'attributeMap'
  DESC 'Attribute mappings used by a DUA'
  EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match
  SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 )

( DUAConfSchemaOID.1.10 NAME 'credentialLevel'
  DESC 'Identifies type of credentials a DUA should
  use when binding to the LDAP server'
  EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match
  SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26
  SINGLE-VALUE )

( DUAConfSchemaOID.1.11 NAME 'objectclassMap'
  DESC 'ObjectClass mappings used by a DUA'
  EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match
  SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 )

( DUAConfSchemaOID.1.12 NAME 'defaultSearchScope' SINGLE-VALUE )

( DUAConfSchemaOID.1.13 NAME 'serviceCredentialLevel'
  DESC 'Identifies type of credentials a DUA
  should use when binding to the LDAP server for a
  specific service'
  EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match
  SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 )

( DUAConfSchemaOID.1.15 NAME 'serviceAuthenticationMethod'
  DESC 'Authentication Method used by a service of the DUA'
  EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
  SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )

( DUAConfSchemaOID.2.4 NAME 'DUAConfigProfile'
  SUP top STRUCTURAL
  DESC 'Abstraction of a base configuration for a DUA'
  MUST ( cn )
  MAY ( defaultServerList $ preferredServerList $
  defaultSearchBase $ defaultSearchScope $
  searchTimeLimit $ bindTimeLimit $

```

```
credentialLevel $ authenticationMethod $
followReferrals $ serviceSearchDescriptor $
serviceCredentialLevel $ serviceAuthenticationMethod $
objectclassMap $ attributeMap $
profileTTL ) )
```

## Solaris Schemas

The schemas required for the Solaris platform are the following.

- Solaris Projects schema
- Role-based access control and execution profile schemas
- Printer schemas

### Solaris Projects Schema

/etc/project is a local source of attributes associated with projects. For more information, see [user\\_attr\(4\)](#).

The Project Attributes are the following.

```
( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.1.1 NAME 'SolarisProjectID'
  DESC 'Unique ID for a Solaris Project entry'
  EQUALITY integerMatch
  SYNTAX INTEGER SINGLE )

( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.1.2 NAME 'SolarisProjectName'
  DESC 'Name of a Solaris Project entry'
  EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
  SYNTAX IA5String SINGLE )

( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.1.3 NAME 'SolarisProjectAttr'
  DESC 'Attributes of a Solaris Project entry'
  EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
  SYNTAX IA5String )

( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.1.30 NAME 'memberGid'
  DESC 'Posix Group Name'
  EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
  SYNTAX 'IA5String' )
```

The Project objectClass is the following.

```
( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.2.1 NAME 'SolarisProject'
  SUP top STRUCTURAL
```

```
MUST ( SolarisProjectID $ SolarisProjectName )
MAY ( memberUid $ memberGid $ description $ SolarisProjectAttr ) )
```

## Role-Based Access Control and Execution Profile Schema

/etc/user\_attr is a local source of extended attributes associated with users and roles. For more information, see [user\\_attr\(4\)](#).

The role-based access control Attributes are the following.

```
( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.1.4 NAME 'SolarisAttrKeyValue'
  DESC 'Semi-colon separated key=value pairs of attributes'
  EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match
  SUBSTRINGS caseIgnoreIA5Match
  SYNTAX 'IA5String' SINGLE-VALUE )

( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.1.7 NAME 'SolarisAttrShortDesc'
  DESC 'Short description about an entry, used by GUIs'
  EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match
  SYNTAX 'IA5String' SINGLE-VALUE )

( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.1.8 NAME 'SolarisAttrLongDesc'
  DESC 'Detail description about an entry'
  EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match
  SYNTAX 'IA5String' SINGLE-VALUE )

( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.1.9 NAME 'SolarisKernelSecurityPolicy'
  DESC 'Solaris kernel security policy'
  EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match
  SYNTAX 'IA5String' SINGLE-VALUE )

( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.1.10 NAME 'SolarisProfileType'
  DESC 'Type of object defined in profile'
  EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match
  SYNTAX 'IA5String' SINGLE-VALUE )

( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.1.11 NAME 'SolarisProfileId'
  DESC 'Identifier of object defined in profile'
  EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
  SYNTAX 'IA5String' SINGLE-VALUE )

( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.1.12 NAME 'SolarisUserQualifier'
  DESC 'Per-user login attributes'
  EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match
  SYNTAX 'IA5String' SINGLE-VALUE )
```

```
( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.1.13 NAME 'SolarisReserved1'  
  DESC 'Reserved for future use'  
  EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match  
  SYNTAX 'IA5String' SINGLE-VALUE )
```

```
( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.1.14 NAME 'SolarisReserved2'  
  DESC 'Reserved for future use'  
  EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match  
  SYNTAX 'IA5String' SINGLE-VALUE )
```

The role based access control objectClasses are the following.

```
( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.2.3 NAME 'SolarisUserAttr' SUP top AUXILIARY  
  DESC 'User attributes'  
  MAY ( SolarisUserQualifier $ SolarisAttrReserved1 $ \  
        SolarisAttrReserved2 $ SolarisAttrKeyValue ) )
```

```
( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.2.4 NAME 'SolarisAuthAttr' SUP top STRUCTURAL  
  DESC 'Authorizations data'  
  MUST cn  
  MAY ( SolarisAttrReserved1 $ SolarisAttrReserved2 $ \  
        SolarisAttrShortDesc $ SolarisAttrLongDesc $ \  
        SolarisAttrKeyValue ) )
```

```
( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.2.5 NAME 'SolarisProfAttr' SUP top STRUCTURAL  
  DESC 'Profiles data'  
  MUST cn  
  MAY ( SolarisAttrReserved1 $ SolarisAttrReserved2 $ \  
        SolarisAttrLongDesc $ SolarisAttrKeyValue ) )
```

```
( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.2.6 NAME 'SolarisExecAttr' SUP top AUXILIARY  
  DESC 'Profiles execution attributes'  
  MAY ( SolarisKernelSecurityPolicy $ SolarisProfileType $ \  
        SolarisAttrReserved1 $ SolarisAttrReserved2 $ \  
        SolarisProfileId $ SolarisAttrKeyValue ) )
```

## Internet Print Protocol Information for LDAP

The following sections provide information about the attributes and ObjectClasses for the internet print protocol and the Sun printer.

### Internet Print Protocol (IPP) Attributes

```
( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1140  
  NAME 'printer-uri'
```

DESC 'A URI supported by this printer.  
 This URI SHOULD be used as a relative distinguished name (RDN).  
 If printer-xri-supported is implemented, then this URI value  
 MUST be listed in a member value of printer-xri-supported.'  
 EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch  
 ORDERING caseIgnoreOrderingMatch  
 SUBSTR caseIgnoreSubstringsMatch  
 SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 SINGLE-VALUE )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1107  
 NAME 'printer-xri-supported'  
 DESC 'The unordered list of XRI (extended resource identifiers) supported  
 by this printer.  
 Each member of the list consists of a URI (uniform resource identifier)  
 followed by optional authentication and security metaparameters.'  
 EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch  
 ORDERING caseIgnoreOrderingMatch  
 SUBSTR caseIgnoreSubstringsMatch  
 SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1135  
 NAME 'printer-name'  
 DESC 'The site-specific administrative name of this printer, more end-user  
 friendly than a URI.'  
 EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch  
 ORDERING caseIgnoreOrderingMatch  
 SUBSTR caseIgnoreSubstringsMatch  
 SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15{127} SINGLE-VALUE )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1119  
 NAME 'printer-natural-language-configured'  
 DESC 'The configured language in which error and status messages will be  
 generated (by default) by this printer.  
 Also, a possible language for printer string attributes set by operator,  
 system administrator, or manufacturer.  
 Also, the (declared) language of the "printer-name", "printer-location",  
 "printer-info", and "printer-make-and-model" attributes of this printer.  
 For example: "en-us" (US English) or "fr-fr" (French in France) Legal values of  
 language tags conform to [RFC3066] "Tags for the Identification of Languages".'  
 EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch  
 ORDERING caseIgnoreOrderingMatch  
 SUBSTR caseIgnoreSubstringsMatch  
 SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15{127} SINGLE-VALUE )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1136  
 NAME 'printer-location'  
 DESC 'Identifies the location of the printer. This could include  
 things like: "in Room 123A", "second floor of building XYZ".'

```
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
ORDERING caseIgnoreOrderingMatch
SUBSTR caseIgnoreSubstringsMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15{127} SINGLE-VALUE )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1139
NAME 'printer-info'
DESC 'Identifies the descriptive information about this printer.
This could include things like: "This printer can be used for
printing color transparencies for HR presentations", or
"Out of courtesy for others, please print only small (1-5 page)
jobs at this printer", or even "This printer is going away on July 1, 1997,
please find a new printer."'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
ORDERING caseIgnoreOrderingMatch
SUBSTR caseIgnoreSubstringsMatch SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15{127}
SINGLE-VALUE )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1134
NAME 'printer-more-info'
DESC 'A URI used to obtain more information about this specific printer.
For example, this could be an HTTP type URI referencing an HTML page
accessible to a Web Browser.
The information obtained from this URI is intended for end user consumption.'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch ORDERING caseIgnoreOrderingMatch
SUBSTR caseIgnoreSubstringsMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 SINGLE-VALUE )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1138
NAME 'printer-make-and-model'
DESC 'Identifies the make and model of the device.
The device manufacturer MAY initially populate this attribute.'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
ORDERING caseIgnoreOrderingMatch
SUBSTR caseIgnoreSubstringsMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15{127} SINGLE-VALUE )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1133
NAME 'printer-ipp-versions-supported'
DESC 'Identifies the IPP protocol version(s) that this printer supports,
including major and minor versions,
i.e., the version numbers for which this Printer implementation meets
the conformance requirements.'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
ORDERING caseIgnoreOrderingMatch
SUBSTR caseIgnoreSubstringsMatch SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15{127} )
```

```

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1132
NAME 'printer-multiple-document-jobs-supported'
DESC 'Indicates whether or not the printer supports more than one
document per job, i.e., more than one Send-Document or Send-Data
operation with document data.'
EQUALITY booleanMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.7 SINGLE-VALUE )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1109
NAME 'printer-charset-configured'
DESC 'The configured charset in which error and status messages will be
generated (by default) by this printer.
Also, a possible charset for printer string attributes set by operator,
system administrator, or manufacturer.
For example: "utf-8" (ISO 10646/Unicode) or "iso-8859-1" (Latin1).
Legal values are defined by the IANA Registry of Coded Character Sets and
the "(preferred MIME name)" SHALL be used as the tag.
For coherence with IPP Model, charset tags in this attribute SHALL be
lowercase normalized.
This attribute SHOULD be static (time of registration) and SHOULD NOT be
dynamically refreshed attributetypes: (subsequently).'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15{63} SINGLE-VALUE )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1131
NAME 'printer-charset-supported'
DESC 'Identifies the set of charsets supported for attribute type values of
type Directory String for this directory entry.
For example: "utf-8" (ISO 10646/Unicode) or "iso-8859-1" (Latin1).
Legal values are defined by the IANA Registry of Coded Character Sets and
the preferred MIME name.'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15{63} )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1137
NAME 'printer-generated-natural-language-supported'
DESC 'Identifies the natural language(s) supported for this directory entry.
For example: "en-us" (US English) or "fr-fr" (French in France).
Legal values conform to [RFC3066], Tags for the Identification of Languages.'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
ORDERING caseIgnoreOrderingMatch SUBSTR caseIgnoreSubstringsMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15{63} )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1130
NAME 'printer-document-format-supported'
DESC 'The possible document formats in which data may be interpreted
and printed by this printer.
Legal values are MIME types come from the IANA Registry of Internet Media Types.'
```

```
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15{127} )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1129
NAME 'printer-color-supported'
DESC 'Indicates whether this printer is capable of any type of color printing
at all, including highlight color.'
EQUALITY booleanMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.7 SINGLE-VALUE )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1128
NAME 'printer-compression-supported'
DESC 'Compression algorithms supported by this printer.
For example: "deflate, gzip". Legal values include; "none", "deflate"
attributetypes: (public domain ZIP), "gzip" (GNU ZIP), "compress" (UNIX).'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15{255} )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1127
NAME 'printer-pages-per-minute'
DESC 'The nominal number of pages per minute which may be output by this
printer (e.g., a simplex or black-and-white printer).
This attribute is informative, NOT a service guarantee.
Typically, it is the value used in marketing literature to describe this printer.'
EQUALITY integerMatch
ORDERING integerOrderingMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.27 SINGLE-VALUE )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1126 NAME 'printer-pages-per-minute-color'
DESC 'The nominal number of color pages per minute which may be output by this
printer (e.g., a simplex or color printer).
This attribute is informative, NOT a service guarantee.
Typically, it is the value used in marketing literature to describe this printer.'
EQUALITY integerMatch
ORDERING integerOrderingMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.27 SINGLE-VALUE )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1125 NAME 'printer-finishings-supported'
DESC 'The possible finishing operations supported by this printer.
Legal values include; "none", "staple", "punch", "cover", "bind", "saddle-stitch",
"edge-stitch", "staple-top-left", "staple-bottom-left", "staple-top-right",
"staple-bottom-right", "edge-stitch-left", "edge-stitch-top", "edge-stitch-right",
"edge-stitch-bottom", "staple-dual-left", "staple-dual-top", "staple-dual-right",
"staple-dual-bottom".'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
SUBSTR caseIgnoreSubstringsMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15{255} )
```



```
( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1124 NAME 'printer-number-up-supported'
DESC 'The possible numbers of print-stream pages to impose upon a single side of
an instance of a selected medium. Legal values include; 1, 2, and 4.
Implementations may support other values.'
EQUALITY integerMatch
ORDERING integerOrderingMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.27 )
```

```
( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1123 NAME 'printer-sides-supported'
DESC 'The number of impression sides (one or two) and the two-sided impression
rotations supported by this printer.
Legal values include; "one-sided", "two-sided-long-edge", "two-sided-short-edge".'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15{127} )
```

```
( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1122 NAME 'printer-media-supported'
DESC 'The standard names/types/sizes (and optional color suffixes) of the media
supported by this printer.
For example: "iso-a4", "envelope", or "na-letter-white".
Legal values conform to ISO 10175, Document Printing Application (DPA), and any
IANA registered extensions.'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15{255} )
```

```
( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1117 NAME 'printer-media-local-supported'
DESC 'Site-specific names of media supported by this printer, in the language in
"printer-natural-language-configured".
For example: "purchasing-form" (site-specific name) as opposed to
(in "printer-media-supported"): "na-letter" (standard keyword from ISO 10175).'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch SUBSTR caseIgnoreSubstringsMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15{255} )
```

```
( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1121 NAME 'printer-resolution-supported'
DESC 'List of resolutions supported for printing documents by this printer.
Each resolution value is a string with 3 fields:
1) Cross feed direction resolution (positive integer), 2) Feed direction
resolution (positive integer), 3) Resolution unit.
Legal values are "dpi" (dots per inch) and "dpcm" (dots per centimeter).
Each resolution field is delimited by ">". For example: "300> 300> dpi>".
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
SUBSTR caseIgnoreSubstringsMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15{255} )
```

```
( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1120 NAME 'printer-print-quality-supported'
DESC 'List of print qualities supported for printing documents on this printer.
For example: "draft, normal". Legal values include; "unknown", "draft", "normal",
"high".'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
```

```
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15{127} )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1110 NAME 'printer-job-priority-supported'
DESC 'Indicates the number of job priority levels supported.
An IPP conformant printer which supports job priority must always support a
full range of priorities from "1" to "100"
(to ensure consistent behavior), therefore this attribute describes the
"granularity".
Legal values of this attribute are from "1" to "100".'
EQUALITY integerMatch
ORDERING integerOrderingMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.27 SINGLE-VALUE )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1118
NAME 'printer-copies-supported'
DESC 'The maximum number of copies of a document that may be printed as a single job.
A value of "0" indicates no maximum limit.
A value of "-1" indicates unknown.'
EQUALITY integerMatch
ORDERING integerOrderingMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.27 SINGLE-VALUE )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1111
NAME 'printer-job-k-octets-supported'
DESC 'The maximum size in kilobytes (1,024 octets actually) incoming print job that
this printer will accept.
A value of "0" indicates no maximum limit. A value of "-1" indicates unknown.'
EQUALITY integerMatch
ORDERING integerOrderingMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.27 SINGLE-VALUE )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1113
NAME 'printer-service-person'
DESC 'The name of the current human service person responsible for servicing this
printer.
It is suggested that this string include information that would enable other humans
to reach the service person, such as a phone number.'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
ORDERING caseIgnoreOrderingMatch
SUBSTR caseIgnoreSubstringsMatch SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15{127}
SINGLE-VALUE )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1114
NAME 'printer-delivery-orientation-supported'
DESC 'The possible delivery orientations of pages as they are printed and ejected
from this printer.
Legal values include; "unknown", "face-up", and "face-down".'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
```

```

SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15{127} )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1115
NAME 'printer-stacking-order-supported'
DESC 'The possible stacking order of pages as they are printed and ejected from
this printer.
Legal values include; "unknown", "first-to-last", "last-to-first".'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15{127} )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1116
NAME 'printer-output-features-supported'
DESC 'The possible output features supported by this printer.
Legal values include; "unknown", "bursting", "decollating", "page-collating",
"offset-stacking".'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15{127} )

( 1.3.18.0.2.4.1108
NAME 'printer-aliases'
DESC 'Site-specific administrative names of this printer in addition the printer
name specified for printer-name.'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
ORDERING caseIgnoreOrderingMatch
SUBSTR caseIgnoreSubstringsMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15{127} )

( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.1.63
NAME 'sun-printer-bsdaddr'
DESC 'Sets the server, print queue destination name and whether the client generates
protocol extensions.
"Solaris" specifies a Solaris print server extension. The value is represented b the
following value: server "," destination ", Solaris".'
SYNTAX '1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15' SINGLE-VALUE )

( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.1.64
NAME 'sun-printer-kvp'
DESC 'This attribute contains a set of key value pairs which may have meaning to the
print subsystem or may be user defined.
Each value is represented by the following: key "=" value.'
SYNTAX '1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15' )

```

## Internet Print Protocol (IPP) ObjectClasses

```

objectclasses: ( 1.3.18.0.2.6.2549
NAME 'slpService'

```

```
DESC 'DUMMY definition'  
SUP 'top' MUST (objectclass) MAY ( )
```

```
objectclasses: ( 1.3.18.0.2.6.254  
NAME 'slpServicePrinter'  
DESC 'Service Location Protocol (SLP) information.'  
AUXILIARY SUP 'slpService')
```

```
objectclasses: ( 1.3.18.0.2.6.258  
NAME 'printerAbstract'  
DESC 'Printer related information.'  
ABSTRACT SUP 'top' MAY ( printer-name  
$ printer-natural-language-configured  
$ printer-location  
$ printer-info  
$ printer-more-info  
$ printer-make-and-model  
$ printer-multiple-document-jobs-supported  
$ printer-charset-configured  
$ printer-charset-supported  
$ printer-generated-natural-language-supported  
$ printer-document-format-supported  
$ printer-color-supported  
$ printer-compression-supported  
$ printer-pages-per-minute  
$ printer-pages-per-minute-color  
$ printer-finishings-supported  
$ printer-number-up-supported  
$ printer-sides-supported  
$ printer-media-supported  
$ printer-media-local-supported  
$ printer-resolution-supported  
$ printer-print-quality-supported  
$ printer-job-priority-supported  
$ printer-copies-supported  
$ printer-job-k-octets-supported  
$ printer-current-operator  
$ printer-service-person  
$ printer-delivery-orientation-supported  
$ printer-stacking-order-supported $ printer! -output-features-supported )
```

```
objectclasses: ( 1.3.18.0.2.6.255  
NAME 'printerService'  
DESC 'Printer information.'  
STRUCTURAL SUP 'printerAbstract' MAY ( printer-uri  
$ printer-xri-supported )
```

```

objectclasses: ( 1.3.18.0.2.6.257
NAME 'printerServiceAuxClass'
DESC 'Printer information.'
AUXILIARY SUP 'printerAbstract' MAY ( printer-uri $ printer-xri-supported ))

```

```

objectclasses: ( 1.3.18.0.2.6.256
NAME 'printerIPP'
DESC 'Internet Printing Protocol (IPP) information.'
AUXILIARY SUP 'top' MAY ( printer-ipp-versions-supported $
printer-multiple-document-jobs-supported ))

```

```

objectclasses: ( 1.3.18.0.2.6.253
NAME 'printerLPR'
DESC 'LPR information.'
AUXILIARY SUP 'top' MUST ( printer-name ) MAY ( printer-aliases))

```

```

objectclasses: ( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.2.14
NAME 'sunPrinter'
DESC 'Sun printer information'
SUP 'top' AUXILIARY MUST (objectclass $ printer-name) MAY
(sun-printer-bsdaddr $ sun-printer-kvp))

```

## Sun Printer Attributes

```

ATTRIBUTE ( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.1.63
NAME sun-printer-bsdaddr
DESC 'Sets the server, print queue destination name and whether the
client generates protocol extensions. "Solaris" specifies a
Solaris print server extension. The value is represented by
the following value: server "," destination ", Solaris".'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15
SINGLE-VALUE
)

```

```

ATTRIBUTE ( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.1.64
NAME sun-printer-kvp
DESC 'This attribute contains a set of key value pairs which may have
meaning to the print subsystem or may be user defined. Each
value is represented by the following: key "=" value.'
EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )

```

## Sun Printer ObjectClasses

```
OBJECTCLASS ( 1.3.6.1.4.1.42.2.27.5.2.14
NAME sunPrinter
DESC 'Sun printer information'
SUP top
AUXILIARY
MUST ( printer-name )
MAY ( sun-printer-bsdaddr $ sun-printer-kvp ))
```

## Generic Directory Server Requirements for LDAP

To support LDAP clients based on Solaris 9 or later Solaris versions, the server, regardless of what brand, must support the LDAP v3 protocol and compound naming and auxiliary object classes. In addition, at least one of the following controls must be supported.

- Simple paged-mode (RFC 2696)
- Virtual List View controls

The server must support at least one of the following authentication methods.

```
anonymous
simple
sasl/cram-MD5
sasl/digest-MD5
sasl/GSSAPI
```

If using `pam_unix`, the server must support storing passwords in UNIX crypt format.

If using TLS, the server must support SSL or TLS.

If using `sasl/GSSAPI`, the server must support SASL, GSSAPI, Kerberos 5 authentication. Support for GSS encryption over the wire is optional.

## Default Filters Used by LDAP Naming Services

If you do not manually specify a parameter for a given service using an SSD, the default filter is used. To list the default filters for a given service, use `ldaplist` with the `-v` option.

In the following example, `filter=(&(objectclass=iphost)(cn=abcde))` defines the default filters.

```
database=hosts
filter=(&(objectclass=iphost)(cn=abcde)
user data=(&(%s) (cn=abcde))
```

ldapList generates the following list of default filters, where %s signifies a string and %d, a number.

```

hosts
(&(objectclass=iphost)(cn=%s))
-----
passwd
(&(objectclass=posixaccount)(uid=%s))
-----
services
(&(objectclass=ipservice)(cn=%s))
-----
group
(&(objectclass=posixgroup)(cn=%s))
-----
netgroup
(&(objectclass=nisnetgroup)(cn=%s))
-----
networks
(&(objectclass=ipnetwork)(ipnetworknumber=%s))
-----
netmasks
(&(objectclass=ipnetwork)(ipnetworknumber=%s))
-----
rpc
(&(objectclass=oncrpc)(cn=%s))
-----
protocols
(&(objectclass=ipprotocol)(cn=%s))
-----
bootparams
(&(objectclass=bootableDevice)(cn=%s))
-----
ethers
(&(objectclass=ieee802Device)(cn=%s))
-----
publickey
(&(objectclass=niskeyobject)(cn=%s))
or
(&(objectclass=niskeyobject)(uidnumber=%d))
-----
aliases
(&(objectclass=mailGroup)(cn=%s))
-----

```

TABLE 14-4 LDAP Filters Used in getXbyY Calls

Filter	Definition
bootparamByName	(&(objectClass=bootableDevice)(cn=%s))
etherByHost	(&(objectClass=ieee802Device)(cn=%s))
etherByEther	(&(objectClass=ieee802Device)(macAddress=%s))
groupByName	(&(objectClass=posixGroup)(cn=%s))
groupByGID	(&(objectClass=posixGroup)(gidNumber=%ld))
groupByMember	(&(objectClass=posixGroup)(memberUid=%s))
hostsByName	(&(objectClass=ipHost)(cn=%s))
hostsByAddr	(&(objectClass=ipHost)(ipHostNumber=%s))
keyByUID	(&(objectClass=nisKeyObject)(uidNumber=%s))
keyByHost	(&(objectClass=nisKeyObject)(cn=%s))
netByName	(&(objectClass=ipNetwork)(cn=%s))
netByAddr	(&(objectClass=ipNetwork)(ipNetworkNumber=%s))
nisgroupMember	(membernisnetgroup=%s)
maskByNet	(&(objectClass=ipNetwork)(ipNetworkNumber=%s))
printerByName	(&(objectClass=sunPrinter)(  (printer-name=%s) (printer-aliases=%s)))
projectByName	(&(objectClass=SolarisProject)(SolarisProjectName=%s))
projectByID	(&(objectClass=SolarisProject)(SolarisProjectID=%ld))
protoByName	(&(objectClass=ipProtocol)(cn=%s))
protoByNumber	(&(objectClass=ipProtocol)(ipProtocolNumber=%d))
passwordByName	(&(objectClass=posixAccount)(uid=%s))
passwordByNumber	(&(objectClass=posixAccount)(uidNumber=%ld))
rpcByName	(&(objectClass=oncrpc)(cn=%s))
rpcByNumber	(&(objectClass=oncrpc)(oncrpcNumber=%d))
serverByName	(&(objectClass=ipService)(cn=%s))
serverByPort	(&(objectClass=ipService)(ipServicePort=%ld))
serverByNameAndProto	(&(objectClass=ipService)(cn=%s)(ipServiceProtocol=%s))



TABLE 14-4 LDAP Filters Used in getXbyY Calls (Continued)

Filter	Definition
specialByNameserver	(ipServiceProtocol=%s)
ByPortAndProto	(&(objectClass=shadowAccount)(uid=%s))
netgroupByTriple	(&(objectClass=nisNetGroup)(cn=%s))
netgroupByMember	(&(objectClass=nisNetGroup)(cn=%s))
authName	(&(objectClass=SolarisAuthAttr)(cn=%s))
auditUserByName	(&(objectClass=SolarisAuditUser)(uid=%s))
execByName	(&(objectClass=SolarisExecAttr)(cn=%s) (SolarisKernelSecurityPolicy=%s)(SolarisProfileType=%s))
execByPolicy	(&(objectClass=SolarisExecAttr)(SolarisProfileId=%s) (SolarisKernelSecurityPolicy=%s)(SolarisProfileType=%s))
profileByName	(&(objectClass=SolarisProfAttr)(cn=%s))
userByName	(&(objectClass=SolarisUserAttr)(uid=%s))

The following table lists the getent attribute filters.

TABLE 14-5 getent Attribute Filters

Filter	Definition
aliases	(objectClass=rfc822MailGroup)
auth_attr	(objectClass=SolarisAuthAttr)
audit_user	(objectClass=SolarisAuditUser)
exec_attr	(objectClass=SolarisExecAttr)
group	(objectClass=posixGroup)
hosts	(objectClass=ipHost)
networks	(objectClass=ipNetwork)
prof_attr	(objectClass=SolarisProfAttr)
protocols	(objectClass=ipProtocol)
passwd	(objectClass=posixAccount)
printers	(objectClass=sunPrinter)
rpc	(objectClass=oncRpc)

**TABLE 14-5** getent Attribute Filters *(Continued)*

Filter	Definition
services	(objectClass=ipService)
shadow	(objectClass=shadowAccount)
project	(objectClass=SolarisProject)
usr_attr	(objectClass=SolarisUserAttr)

# Transitioning From NIS to LDAP (Overview/Tasks)

---

This chapter describes how to enable support of NIS clients that use naming information stored in the LDAP directory. By following the procedures in this chapter, you can transition from using an NIS naming service to using LDAP naming services.

To determine the benefits of transitioning to LDAP, see [“LDAP Naming Services Compared to Other Naming Services”](#) on page 130.

The following information is included in this chapter.

- “NIS-to-LDAP Service Overview” on page 243
- “Transitioning From NIS to LDAP (Task Map)” on page 248
- “Prerequisites for the NIS-to-LDAP Transition” on page 249
- “Setting Up the NIS-to-LDAP Service” on page 250
- “NIS-to-LDAP Best Practices With Sun Java System Directory Server” on page 257
- “NIS-to-LDAP Restrictions” on page 259
- “NIS-to-LDAP Troubleshooting” on page 260
- “Reverting to NIS” on page 264

## NIS-to-LDAP Service Overview

The NIS-to-LDAP transition service (*N2L service*) replaces existing NIS daemons on the NIS master server with NIS-to-LDAP transition daemons. The N2L service also creates an NIS-to-LDAP mapping file on that server. The mapping file specifies the mapping between NIS map entries and equivalent Directory Information Tree (DIT) entries in LDAP. An NIS master server that has gone through this transition is referred to as an *N2L server*. The slave servers do not have an `NISLDAPmapping` file, so they continue to function in the usual manner. The slave servers periodically update their data from the N2L server as if it were a regular NIS master.

The behavior of the N2L service is controlled by the `ypserv` and `NISLDAPmapping` configuration files. A script, `inityp2l`, assists with the initial setup of these configuration files. Once the N2L server has been established, you can maintain N2L by directly editing the configuration files.

The N2L service supports the following:

- Import of NIS maps into the LDAP Directory Information Tree (DIT)
- Client access to DIT information with the speed and extensibility of NIS

In any naming system, only one source of information can be the authoritative source. In traditional NIS, NIS sources are the authoritative information. When using the N2L service, the source of authoritative data is the LDAP directory. The directory is managed by using directory management tools, as described in [Chapter 9, “LDAP Basic Components and Concepts \(Overview\)”](#).

NIS sources are retained for emergency backup or backout only. After using the N2L service, you can gradually phase out NIS clients. Eventually, all NIS clients can be replaced by Solaris LDAP naming services clients.

Additional overview information is provided in the following subsections:

- [“NIS-to-LDAP Audience Assumptions” on page 244](#)
- [“When Not to Use the NIS-to-LDAP Service” on page 245](#)
- [“Effects of the NIS-to-LDAP Service on Users” on page 245](#)
- [“NIS-to-LDAP Transition Terminology” on page 246](#)
- [“NIS-to-LDAP Commands, Files, and Maps” on page 247](#)
- [“Supported Standard Mappings” on page 247](#)

## NIS-to-LDAP Tools and the Service Management Facility

The NIS and LDAP services are managed by the Service Management Facility. Administrative actions on these services, such as enabling, disabling, or restarting, can be performed by using the `svcadm` command. You can query the status of services by using the `svcs` command. For more information about using SMF with LDAP and NIS, see [“LDAP and the Service Management Facility” on page 188](#) and [“NIS and the Service Management Facility” on page 84](#). For an overview of SMF, refer to [Chapter 17, “Managing Services \(Overview\)”](#), in *System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*. Also refer to the `svcadm(1M)` and `svcs(1)` man pages for more details.

## NIS-to-LDAP Audience Assumptions

You need to be familiar with NIS and LDAP concepts, terminology, and IDs to perform the procedures in this chapter. For more information about the NIS and LDAP naming services, see the following sections of this book.

- [Chapter 4, “Network Information Service \(NIS\) \(Overview\)”](#), for an overview of NIS
- [Chapter 8, “Introduction to LDAP Naming Services \(Overview/Reference\)”](#), for an overview of LDAP

## When Not to Use the NIS-to-LDAP Service

Do not use the N2L service in these situations:

- In an environment where there is no plan to share data between NIS and LDAP naming services clients  
 In such an environment, an N2L server would serve as an excessively complex NIS master server.
- In an environment where NIS maps are managed by tools that modify the NIS source files (other than `yppaswd`)  
 Regeneration of NIS sources from DIT maps is an imprecise task that requires manual checking of the resulting maps. Once the N2L service is used, regeneration of NIS sources is provided only for backout or reverting to NIS.
- In an environment with no NIS clients  
 In such an environment, use Solaris LDAP naming services clients and their corresponding tools.

## Effects of the NIS-to-LDAP Service on Users

Simply installing the files that are related to the N2L service does not change the NIS server's default behavior. At installation, the administrator will see some changes to NIS man pages and the addition of N2L helper scripts, `inityp2l` and `yppmap2src`, on the servers. But as long as `inityp2l` is not run or the N2L configuration files are not created manually on the NIS server, the NIS components continue to start in traditional NIS mode and function as usual.

After `inityp2l` is run, users see some changes in server and client behavior. Following is a list of NIS and LDAP user types and a description of what each type of user should notice after the N2L service is deployed.

User Type	Effect of N2L Service
NIS master server administrators	The NIS master server is converted to an N2L server. The <code>NISLDAPmapping</code> and <code>yppserv</code> configuration files are installed on the N2L server. After the N2L server is established, you can use LDAP commands to administer your naming information.
NIS slave server administrators	After the N2L transition, an NIS slave server continues to run NIS in the usual manner. The N2L server pushes updated NIS maps to the slave server when <code>yppush</code> is called by <code>yppmake</code> . See the <a href="#">yppmake(1M)</a> man page.

User Type	Effect of N2L Service
NIS clients	<p>NIS read operations are no different than traditional NIS. When a Solaris LDAP naming services client changes information in the DIT, the information is copied into the NIS maps. The copy operation is complete after a configurable timeout expires. Such behavior is similar to the behavior of a normal NIS client when the client is connected to an NIS slave server.</p> <p>If an N2L server cannot bind to the LDAP server for a read, the N2L server returns the information from its own cached copy. Alternatively, the N2L server can return an internal server error. You can configure the N2L server to respond either way. See the <code>ypserv(1M)</code> man page for more details.</p>
All users	<p>When an NIS client makes a password change request, the change is immediately visible on the N2L master server and to native LDAP clients.</p> <p>If you attempt to change a password on the NIS client, and the LDAP server is unavailable, then the change is refused and the N2L server returns an internal server error. This behavior prevents incorrect information from being written into the cache.</p>

## NIS-to-LDAP Transition Terminology

The following terms are related to the implementation of the N2L service.

TABLE 15-1 Terminology Related to the N2L Transition

Term	Description
N2L configuration files	The <code>/var/yp/NISLDAPmapping</code> and <code>/var/yp/ypserv</code> files that the <code>ypserv</code> daemon uses to start the master server in N2L mode. See the <code>NISLDAPmapping(4)</code> and <code>ypserv(4)</code> man pages for details.
map	<p>In the context of the N2L service, the term map is used in two ways:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To refer to a database file in which NIS stores a specific type of information</li> <li>■ To describe the process of mapping NIS information to or from the LDAP DIT</li> </ul>
mapping	The process of converting NIS entries to or from LDAP DIT entries.
mapping file	The <code>NISLDAPmapping</code> file that establishes how to map entries between NIS and LDAP files.
standard maps	Commonly used NIS maps that are supported by the N2L service without requiring manual modification to the mapping file. A list of supported standard maps is provided in <a href="#">“Supported Standard Mappings” on page 247</a> .
nonstandard maps	Standard NIS maps that are customized to use mappings between NIS and the LDAP DIT other than the mappings identified in RFC 2307 or its successor.
custom map	Any map that is not a standard map and therefore requires manual modifications to the mapping file when transitioning from NIS to LDAP.

TABLE 15-1 Terminology Related to the N2L Transition (Continued)

Term	Description
LDAP client	Any traditional LDAP client that reads and writes to any LDAP server. A traditional LDAP client is a system that reads and writes to any LDAP server. A Solaris LDAP naming services client handles a customized subset of naming information.
LDAP naming services client	A Solaris LDAP client that handles a customized subset of naming information.
N2L server	An NIS master server that has been reconfigured as an N2L server by using the N2L service. Reconfiguration includes replacing NIS daemons and adding new configuration files.

## NIS-to-LDAP Commands, Files, and Maps

There are two utilities, two configuration files, and a mapping that are associated with the N2L transition.

TABLE 15-2 Descriptions of N2L Commands, Files, and Maps

Command/File/Map	Description
<code>/usr/lib/netsvc/yp/inityp2l</code>	A utility that assists with the creation of the <code>NISLDAPmapping</code> and <code>ypserv</code> configuration files. This utility is not a general-purpose tool for the management of these files. An advanced user can maintain the N2L configuration files or create custom mappings by using a text editor to examine and customize the <code>inityp2l</code> output. See the <code>inityp2l(1M)</code> man page.
<code>/usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypmap2src</code>	A utility that converts standard NIS maps to approximations of the equivalent NIS source files. The primary use for <code>ypmap2src</code> is to convert from an N2L transition server to traditional NIS. See the <code>ypmap2src(1M)</code> man page.
<code>/var/yp/NISLDAPmapping</code>	A configuration file that specifies the mapping between NIS map entries and equivalent Directory Information Tree (DIT) entries in LDAP. See the <code>NISLDAPmapping(4)</code> man page.
<code>/var/yp/ypserv</code>	A file that specifies configuration information for the NIS-to-LDAP transition daemons. See the <code>ypserv(4)</code> man page.
<code>ageing.byname</code>	A mapping used by <code>ypasswdd</code> to read and write password aging information to the DIT when the NIS-to-LDAP transition is implemented.

## Supported Standard Mappings

By default, the N2L service supports mappings between the following list of maps and RFC 2307, or its successors', LDAP entries. These standard maps do not require manual modification to the mapping file. Any maps on your system that are not in the following list are considered custom maps and require manual modification.

The N2L service also supports automatic mapping of the `auto.*` maps. However, since most `auto.*` file names and contents are specific to each network configuration, those files are not specified in this list. The exceptions to this are the `auto.home` and `auto.master` maps, which are supported as standard maps.

```
audit_user
auth_attr
auto.home
auto.master
bootparams
ethers.byaddr ethers.byname
exec_attr
group.bygid group.byname group.adjunct.byname
hosts.byaddr hosts.byname
ipnodes.byaddr ipnodes.byname
mail.byaddr mail.aliases
netgroup netgroup.byprojid netgroup.byuser netgroup.byhost
netid.byname
netmasks.byaddr
networks.byaddr networks.byname
passwd.byname passwd.byuid passwd.adjunct.byname
printers.conf.byname
prof_attr
project.byname project.byprojectid
protocols.byname protocols.bynumber
publickey.byname
rpc.bynumber
services.byname services.byservicename
timezone.byname
user_attr
```

During the NIS-to-LDAP transition, the `yppassdd` daemon uses the N2L-specific map, `ageing.byname`, to read and write password aging information to the DIT. If you are not using password aging, then the `ageing.byname` mapping is ignored.

## Transitioning From NIS to LDAP (Task Map)

The following table identifies the procedures needed to install and manage the N2L service with standard and with custom NIS-to-LDAP mappings.



Task	Description	For Instructions
Complete all prerequisites.	Be sure that you have properly configured your NIS server and Sun Java System Directory Server (LDAP server).	<a href="#">“Prerequisites for the NIS-to-LDAP Transition” on page 249</a>
Set up the N2L service.	Run <code>ini typ2l</code> on the NIS master server to set up one of these mappings:	
	Standard mappings	<a href="#">“How to Set Up the N2L Service With Standard Mappings” on page 251</a>
	Custom or nonstandard mappings	<a href="#">“How to Set Up the N2L Service With Custom or Nonstandard Mappings” on page 253</a>
Customize a map.	View examples of how to create custom maps for the N2L transition.	<a href="#">“Examples of Custom Maps” on page 255</a>
Configure Sun Java System Directory Server with N2L.	Configure and tune Sun Java System Directory Server as your LDAP server for the N2L transition.	<a href="#">“NIS-to-LDAP Best Practices With Sun Java System Directory Server” on page 257</a>
Troubleshoot the system.	Identify and resolve common N2L issues.	<a href="#">“NIS-to-LDAP Troubleshooting” on page 260</a>
Revert to NIS.	Revert to NIS using the appropriate map:	
	Maps based on old NIS source files	<a href="#">“How to Revert to Maps Based on Old Source Files” on page 264</a>
	Maps based on the current DIT	<a href="#">“How to Revert to Maps Based on Current DIT Contents” on page 265</a>

## Prerequisites for the NIS-to-LDAP Transition

Before implementing the N2L service, you must check or complete the following items.

- Make sure that the system is set up as a working traditional NIS server before running the `ini typ2l` script to enable N2L mode.
- Configure the LDAP directory server on your system.

Sun Java System Directory Server (formerly Sun ONE Directory Server) and compatible versions of directory servers offered by Sun Microsystems, Inc., are supported with the NIS-to-LDAP migration tools. If you use Sun Java System Directory Server, configure the server by using the `idsconfig` command *before* you set up the N2L service. For more information about `idsconfig`, see [Chapter 11, “Setting Up Sun Java System Directory Server With LDAP Clients \(Tasks\)”](#), and the `idsconfig(1M)` man page.

Other (third party) LDAP servers might work with the N2L service, but they are not supported by Sun. If you are using an LDAP server other than the Sun Java System Directory Server or compatible Sun servers, you must manually configure the server to support RFC 2307, or its successors', schemas *before* you set up the N2L service.

- Make sure that the `nsswitch.conf` file lists `files` before `nis` for the lookup order, at least for the `hosts` and `ipnodes` entries.
- Ensure that the addresses of the N2L master server and the LDAP server are present in the `hosts` or `ipnodes` files on the N2L master server. Whether the server addresses must be listed in `hosts`, `ipnodes`, or both files depends on how your system is configured to resolve local host names.

An alternative solution is to list the LDAP server address, not its host name, in `ypserv`. This means that the LDAP server address is listed in another place, so changing the address of either the LDAP server or the N2L master server requires additional file modifications.

## Setting Up the NIS-to-LDAP Service

You can set up the N2L service either by using standard mappings or by using custom mappings, as described in the next two procedures.

As part of the NIS-to-LDAP conversion, you need to run the `inityp2l` command. This command runs an interactive script for which you must provide configuration information. The following list shows the type of information you need to provide. See the [ypserv\(1M\)](#) man page for explanations of these attributes.

- The name of the configuration file being created (default = `/etc/default/ypserv`)
- The DN that stores configuration information in LDAP (default = `ypserv`)
- Preferred server list for mapping data to/from LDAP
- Authentication method for mapping data to/from LDAP
- Transport Layer Security (TLS) method for mapping data to/from LDAP
- Proxy user bind DN to read/write data from/to LDAP
- Proxy user password to read/write data from/to LDAP
- Timeout value (in seconds) for LDAP bind operation
- Timeout value (in seconds) for LDAP search operation
- Timeout value (in seconds) for LDAP modify operation
- Timeout value (in seconds) for LDAP add operation
- Timeout value (in seconds) for LDAP delete operation
- Time limit (in seconds) for search operation on LDAP server
- Size limit (in bytes) for search operation on LDAP server
- Whether N2L should follow LDAP referrals
- LDAP retrieval error action, number of retrieval attempts, and timeout (in seconds) between each attempt
- Store error action, number of attempts, and timeout (in seconds) between each attempt

- Mapping file name
- Whether to generate mapping information for `auto_direct` map  
The script places relevant information regarding custom maps at appropriate places in the mapping file.
- The naming context
- Whether to enable password changes
- Whether to change the default TTL values for any map

---

**Note** – `sasl/cram-md5` authentication is *not* supported by most LDAP servers, including Sun Java System Directory Server.

---

## ▼ How to Set Up the N2L Service With Standard Mappings

Use this procedure if you are transitioning the maps listed in “Supported Standard Mappings” on page 247. If you are using custom or nonstandard maps, see “How to Set Up the N2L Service With Custom or Nonstandard Mappings” on page 253.

When the LDAP server has been set up, run the `inittyp2l` script and supply configuration information when prompted. `inittyp2l` sets up the configuration and mapping files for standard and `auto.*` maps.

- 1 **Complete the prerequisite steps that are listed in “Prerequisites for the NIS-to-LDAP Transition” on page 249.**
- 2 **On the NIS master server, become superuser or assume an equivalent role.**  
Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control (Tasks),” in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.
- 3 **Convert the NIS master server into an N2L server.**  
`# inittyp2l`  
Run the `inittyp2l` script on the NIS master server and follow the prompts. See “Setting Up the NIS-to-LDAP Service” on page 250 for a list of the information you need to provide.  
See the `inittyp2l(1M)` man page for more details.
- 4 **Determine if the LDAP Directory Information Tree (DIT) is fully initialized.**  
The DIT is fully initialized if it already contains the information necessary to populate all the maps that are listed in the `NISLDAPmapping` file.

- If no, continue with [Step 5](#) and skip Step 6.
- If yes, skip Step 5 and go to [Step 6](#).

## 5 Initialize the DIT for the transition from the NIS source files.

Perform these steps only if the DIT has *not* been fully initialized.

### a. Make sure that the old NIS maps are up-to-date.

```
# cd /var/yp
# make
```

For more information, see the `ypmake(1M)` man page.

### b. Stop the NIS daemons.

```
# svcadm disable network/nis/server:default
```

### c. Copy the old maps to the DIT, then initialize N2L support for the maps.

```
# ypserv -Ir
```

Wait for `ypserv` to exit.

---

**Tip** – The original NIS dbm files are not overwritten. You can recover these files, if needed.

---

### d. Start the NIS daemons to ensure that they use the new maps.

```
# svcadm enable network/nis/server:default
```

This completes the set up of the N2L service with standard maps. You do not need to complete Step 6.

## 6 Initialize the NIS maps.

Perform these steps only if the DIT is fully initialized and you skipped Step 5.

### a. Stop the NIS daemons.

```
# svcadm disable network/nis/server:default
```

### b. Initialize the NIS maps from information in the DIT.

```
# ypserv -r
```

Wait for `ypserv` to exit.

---

**Tip** – The original NIS dbm files are not overwritten. You can recover these files, if needed.

---

### c. Start the NIS daemons to ensure that they use the new maps.

```
# svcadm enable network/nis/server:default
```

## ▼ How to Set Up the N2L Service With Custom or Nonstandard Mappings

Use this procedure if the following circumstances apply:

- You have maps that are not listed in [“Supported Standard Mappings” on page 247](#).
- You have standard NIS maps that you want to map to non-RFC 2307 LDAP mappings.

**1 Complete the prerequisite steps that are listed in [“Prerequisites for the NIS-to-LDAP Transition” on page 249](#).**

**2 On the NIS master server, become superuser or assume an equivalent role.**

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control \(Tasks\),” in \*System Administration Guide: Security Services\*](#).

**3 Configure the NIS master server into the N2L server.**

```
# inityp2l
```

Run the `inityp2l` script on the NIS master server and follow the prompts. See [“Setting Up the NIS-to-LDAP Service” on page 250](#) for a list of the information you need to provide.

See the `inityp2l(1M)` man page for more details.

**4 Modify the `/var/yp/NISLDAPmapping` file.**

See [“Examples of Custom Maps” on page 255](#) for examples of how to modify the mapping file.

**5 Determine if the LDAP Directory Information Tree (DIT) is fully initialized.**

The DIT is fully initialized if it already contains the information necessary to populate all the maps that are listed in the `NISLDAPmapping` file.

- If no, complete Step 6, Step 8, and Step 9.
- If yes, skip Step 6 and complete [Step 7](#), Step 8, and Step 9.

**6 Initialize the DIT for the transition from the NIS source files.**

**a. Make sure that the old NIS maps are up-to-date.**

```
# cd /var/yp
# make
```

For more information, see the `ypmake(1M)` man page.

**b. Stop the NIS daemons.**

```
# svcadm disable network/nis/server:default
```

- c. **Copy the old maps to the DIT, then initialize N2L support for the maps.**

```
# ypserv -Ir
```

Wait for ypserv to exit.

---

**Tip** – The original NIS dbm files are not overwritten. You can recover these files, if needed.

---

- d. **Start the NIS daemons to ensure that they use the new maps.**

```
# svcadm enable network/nis/server:default
```

- e. **Skip Step 7 and continue with [Step 8](#).**

## 7 Initialize the NIS maps.

Perform this step only if the DIT is fully initialized.

- a. **Stop the NIS daemons.**

```
# svcadm disable network/nis/server:default
```

- b. **Initialize the NIS maps from information in the DIT.**

```
# ypserv -r
```

Wait for ypserv to exit.

---

**Tip** – The original NIS dbm files are not overwritten. You can recover these files, if needed.

---

- c. **Start the NIS daemons to ensure that they use the new maps.**

```
# svcadm enable network/nis/server:default
```

## 8 Verify that the LDAP entries are correct.

If the entries are not correct, then the entries can not be found by LDAP naming services clients.

```
# ldapsearch -h server -s sub -b "ou=servdates, dc=..." \
"objectclass=servDates"
```

## 9 Verify the contents of the LDAP\_ maps.

The following sample output shows how to use `makedbm` to verify the contents of the `hosts.byaddr` map.

```
# makedbm -u LDAP_servdate.bynumber
plato: 1/3/2001
johnson: 2/4/2003,1/3/2001
yeats: 4/4/2002
poe: 3/3/2002,3/4/2000
```

If the contents are as expected, the transition from NIS to LDAP was successful.

Note that the original NIS dbm files are not overwritten, so you can always recover those files. See [“Reverting to NIS” on page 264](#) for more information.

## Examples of Custom Maps

The following two examples show how you might customize maps. Use your preferred text editor to modify the `/var/yp/NISLDAPmapping` file as needed. For more information about file attributes and syntax, see the [NISLDAPmapping\(4\)](#) man page and the LDAP naming services information in [Chapter 9, “LDAP Basic Components and Concepts \(Overview\)”](#).

### Example 1—Moving Host Entries

This example shows how to move host entries from the default location to another (nonstandard) location in the DIT.

Change the `nisLDAPobjectDN` attribute in the `NISLDAPmapping` file to the new base LDAP distinguished name (DN). For this example, the internal structure of the LDAP objects is unchanged, so `objectClass` entries are unchanged.

Change:

```
nisLDAPobjectDN hosts: \
    ou=hosts,?one?, \
    objectClass=device, \
    objectClass=ipHost
```

To:

```
nisLDAPobjectDN hosts: \
    ou=newHosts,?one?, \
    objectClass=device, \
    objectClass=ipHost
```

This change causes entries to be mapped under

```
dn: ou=newHosts, dom=domain1, dc=sun, dc=com
```

instead of under

```
dn: ou=hosts, dom=domain1, dc=sun, dc=com.
```

### Example 2—Implementing a Custom Map

This example shows how to implement a custom map.

A hypothetical map, *servdate.bynumber*, contains information about the servicing dates for systems. This map is indexed by the machine's serial number which, in this example, is 123. Each entry consists of the machine owner's name, a colon, and a comma-separated list of service dates, such as John Smith:1/3/2001,4/5/2003.

The old map structure is to be mapped onto LDAP entries of the following form:

```
dn: number=123,ou=servdates,dc=... \
    number: 123 \
    userName: John Smith \
    date: 1/3/2001 \
    date: 4/5/2003 \
    .
    .
    .
    objectClass: servDates
```

By examining the `NISLDAPmapping` file, you can see that the mapping closest to the required pattern is `group`. The custom mappings can be modeled on the `group` mapping. Since there is only one map, no `nisLDAPdatabaseIdMapping` attribute is required. The attributes to be added to `NISLDAPmapping` are the following:

```
nisLDAPentryTtl servdate.bynumber:1800:5400:3600

nisLDAPnameFields servdate.bynumber: \
    ("%s:%s", uname, dates)

nisLDAPobjectDN servdate.bynumber: \
    ou=servdates, ?one? \
    objectClass=servDates:

nisLDAPattributeFromField servdate.bynumber: \
    dn=("number=%s,", rf_key), \
    number=rf_key, \
    userName=uname, \
    (date)=(dates, ",")

nisLDAPfieldFromAttribute servdate.bynumber: \
    rf_key=number, \
    uname=userName, \
    dates="%s,", (date), ",")
```



# NIS-to-LDAP Best Practices With Sun Java System Directory Server

The N2L service supports Sun Java System Directory Server (formerly Sun ONE Directory Server) and compatible versions of directory servers offered by Sun Microsystems, Inc. Other (third party) LDAP servers might work with the N2L service, but they are not supported by Sun. If you are using an LDAP server other than the Sun Java System Directory Server or compatible Sun servers, you must manually configure the server to support RFC 2307, or its successors', schemas.

If you are using the Sun Java System Directory Server, you can enhance the directory server to improve performance. To make these enhancements, you must have LDAP administrator privileges on the Sun Java System Directory Server. In addition, the directory server might need to be rebooted, a task that must be coordinated with the server's LDAP clients. The Sun Java System Directory Server (and Sun ONE and iPlanet Directory Server) documentation is available on the [Sun Java System Directory Server Enterprise Edition 6.2](http://docs.sun.com/coll/1224.3) (<http://docs.sun.com/coll/1224.3>) web site.

## Creating Virtual List View Indexes With Sun Java System Directory Server

For large maps, LDAP virtual list view (VLV) indexes must be used to ensure LDAP searches return complete results. For information about setting up VLV indexes on the Sun Java System Directory Server, see the [Sun Java System Directory Server Enterprise Edition 6.2](http://docs.sun.com/coll/1224.3) (<http://docs.sun.com/coll/1224.3>) documentation.

VLV search results use a fixed page size of 50000. If VLVs are used with Sun Java System Directory Server, both the LDAP server and N2L server must be able to handle transfers of this size. If all of your maps are known to be smaller than this limit, you do not need to use VLV indexes. However, if your maps are larger than the size limit, or you are unsure of the size of all maps, use VLV indexes to avoid incomplete returns.

If you are using VLV indexes, set up the appropriate size limits as follows.

- On the Sun Java System Directory Server: `nslapd-sizeLimit` attribute must be set greater than or equal to 50000 or -1. See the [idsconfig\(1M\)](#) man page.
- On the N2L server: `nisLDAPsearchSizeLimit` attribute must be set greater than or equal to 50000 or zero. For more information, see the [NISLDAPmapping\(4\)](#) man page.

Once VLV indexes have been created, activate them by running `directoryserver` with the `vlvindex` option on the Sun Java System Directory Server. See the [directoryserver\(1M\)](#) man page for more information.

## VLVs for Standard Maps

Use the Sun Java System Directory Server `idsconfig` command to set up VLVs if the following conditions apply:

- You are using the Sun Java System Directory Server.
- You are mapping standard maps to RFC 2307 LDAP entries.

VLVs are domain specific, so each time `idsconfig` is run, VLVs are created for one NIS domain. Therefore, during the NIS-to-LDAP transition, you must run `idsconfig` once for *each* `nisLDAPdomainContext` attribute included in the `NISLDAPmapping` file.

## VLVs for Custom and Nonstandard Maps

You must manually create new Sun Java System Directory Server VLVs for maps, or copy and modify existing VLV indexes, if the following conditions apply:

- You are using the Sun Java System Directory Server.
- You have large custom maps or have standard maps that are mapped to nonstandard DIT locations.

To view existing VLV indexes, type the following:

```
# ldapsearch -h hostname -s sub -b "cn=ldbm database,cn=plugins,cn=config" \
"objectClass=vlvSearch"
```

## Avoiding Server Timeouts With Sun Java System Directory Server

When the N2L server refreshes a map, the result might be a large LDAP directory access. If the Sun Java System Directory Server is not correctly configured, the refresh operation might time out before completion. To avoid directory server timeouts, modify the following Sun Java System Directory Server attributes manually or by running the `idsconfig` command.

For example, to increase the minimum amount of time in seconds that the server should spend performing the search request, modify these attributes:

```
dn: cn=config
nsslapd-timelimit: -1
```

For testing purposes, you can use an attribute value of `-1`, which indicates no limit. When you have determined the optimum limit value, change the attribute value. Do *not* maintain any attribute settings at `-1` on a production server. With no limits, the server might be vulnerable to Denial of Service attacks.

For more information about configuring Sun Java System Directory Server with LDAP, see [Chapter 11, “Setting Up Sun Java System Directory Server With LDAP Clients \(Tasks\)”](#) of this book.

## Avoiding Buffer Overruns With Sun Java System Directory Server

To avoid buffer overruns, modify the Sun Java System Directory Server attributes manually or by running the `idsconfig` command.

1. For example, to increase the maximum number of entries that are returned for a client search query, modify these attributes:

```
dn: cn=config
nsslapd-sizeLimit: -1
```

2. To increase the maximum number of entries that are verified for a client search query, modify these attributes:

```
dn: cn=config, cn=ldb database, cn=plugins, cn=config
nsslapd-lookthroughLimit: -1
```

For testing purposes, you can use an attribute value of `-1`, which indicates no limit. When you have determined the optimum limit value, change the attribute value. Do *not* maintain any attribute settings at `-1` on a production server. With no limits, the server might be vulnerable to Denial of Service attacks.

If VLVs are being used, the `sizeLimit` attribute values should be set as defined in [“Creating Virtual List View Indexes With Sun Java System Directory Server”](#) on page 257. If VLVs are not being used, the size limit should be set large enough to accommodate the largest container.

For more information about configuring Sun Java System Directory Server with LDAP, see [Chapter 11, “Setting Up Sun Java System Directory Server With LDAP Clients \(Tasks\)”](#).

## NIS-to-LDAP Restrictions

When the N2L server has been set up, the NIS source files are no longer used. Therefore, do not run `yppmake` on an N2L server. If `yppmake` is accidentally run, such as for an existing cron job, the N2L service is unaffected. However, a warning is logged suggesting that `yppush` should be called explicitly.

# NIS-to-LDAP Troubleshooting

This section covers two areas of troubleshooting:

- [“Common LDAP Error Messages” on page 260](#)
- [“NIS-to-LDAP Issues” on page 261](#)

## Common LDAP Error Messages

Sometimes the N2L server logs errors that relate to internal LDAP problems, resulting in LDAP-related error messages. Although the errors are nonfatal, they indicate problems to investigate. For example, the N2L server might continue to operate, but provide out-of-date or incomplete results.

The following list includes some of the common LDAP error messages that you might encounter when implementing the N2L service. Error descriptions, and possible causes and solutions for the errors, are included.

Administrative limit exceeded

**Error Number:** 11

**Cause:** An LDAP search was made that was larger than allowed by the directory server's `nsslapd-size-limit` attribute. Only partial information will be returned.

**Solution:** Increase the value of the `nsslapd-size-limit` attribute, or implement a VLV index for the failing search.

Invalid DN Syntax

**Error Number:** 34

**Cause:** An attempt has been made to write an LDAP entry with a DN that contains illegal characters. The N2L server attempts to escape illegal characters, such as the `+` symbol, that are generated in DNs.

**Solution:** Check the LDAP server error log to find out which illegal DNs were written, then modify the `NISLDAPmapping` file that generated the illegal DNs.

Object class violation

**Error Number:** 65

**Cause:** An attempt has been made to write an LDAP entry that is invalid. Generally, this error is due to missing `MUST` attributes that can be caused by either of the following circumstances.

- Bugs in the `NISLDAPmapping` file that create entries with missing attributes
- Attempts to add an `AUXILIARY` attribute to an object that does not exist

For example, if a user name has not yet been created from the `passwd.byxxx` map, an attempt to add auxiliary information to that user will fail.

**Solution:** For bugs in the `NISLDAPmapping` file, check what was written in the server error log to determine the nature of the problem.

Can't contact LDAP server

**Error Number:** 81

**Cause:** The `ypserv` file might be incorrectly configured to point to the wrong LDAP directory server. Alternatively, the directory server might not be running.

**Solution:**

- Reconfigure the `ypserv` file to point to the correct LDAP directory server.
- To confirm that the LDAP server is running, become superuser, or assume an equivalent role, on the directory server and type:

```
# pgrep -l slapd
```

Timeout

**Error Number:** 85

**Cause:** An LDAP operation timed out, typically while updating a map from the DIT. The map might now contain out-of-date information.

**Solution:** Increase the `nisLDAPxxxTimeout` attributes in the `ypserv` configuration file.

## NIS-to-LDAP Issues

The following problems could occur while running the N2L server. Possible causes and solutions are provided.

### Debugging the NISLDAPmapping File

The mapping file, `NISLDAPmapping`, is complex. Many potential errors might cause the mapping to behave in unexpected ways. Use the following techniques to resolve such problems.

#### Console Message Displays When `ypserv -ir` (or `-Ir`) Runs

**Problem:** A simple message is displayed on the console and the server exits (a detailed description is written to `syslog`).

**Cause:** The syntax of the mapping file might be incorrect.

**Solution:** Check and correct the syntax in the `NISLDAPmapping` file.

#### NIS Daemon Exits at Startup

**Problem:** When `ypserv` or other NIS daemons run, an LDAP-related error message is logged and the daemon exits.

**Cause:** The cause might be one of the following:

- The LDAP server cannot be contacted.
- An entry found in an NIS map or in the DIT is incompatible with the mapping specified.
- An attempt to read or write to the LDAP server returns an error.

**Solution:** Examine the error log on the LDAP server. See the LDAP errors that are listed in [“Common LDAP Error Messages” on page 260](#).

### Unexpected Results From NIS Operations

**Problem:** NIS operations do not return the expected results, but no errors are logged.

**Cause:** Incorrect entries might exist in the LDAP or NIS maps, which results in mappings not completing as intended.

**Solution:** Check and correct entries in the LDAP DIT and in the N2L versions of the NIS maps.

1. Check that the correct entries exist in the LDAP DIT, and correct the entries as needed.  
If you are using the Sun Java System Directory Server, start the management console by running `directoryserver startconsole`.
2. Check that the N2L versions of the NIS maps in the `/var/yp` directory contain the expected entries by comparing the newly generated map to the original map. Correct entries as needed.

```
# cd /var/yp/domainname
# makedbm -u test.byname
# makedbm -u LDAP_test.byname
```

Be aware of the following when checking the output for the maps:

- The order of entries might not be the same in both files.  
Use the `sort` command before comparing output.
- The use of white space might not be the same in both files.  
Use the `diff -b` command when comparing output.

### Processing Order of NIS Maps

**Problem:** Object class violations occur.

**Cause:** When the `ypserv -i` command is run, each NIS map is read and its contents are written into the DIT. Several maps might contribute attributes to the same DIT object. Generally, one map creates most of the object, including all the object's **MUST** attributes. Other maps contribute additional **MAY** attributes.

Maps are processed in the same order that `nisLDAPobjectDN` attributes appear in the `NISLDAPmapping` file. If maps containing **MAY** attributes get processed before maps containing **MUST** attributes, then object class violations occur. See Error 65 in [“Common LDAP Error Messages” on page 260](#) for more information about this error.

---

**Solution:** Reorder the `nislDAPobjectDN` attributes so that maps are processed in the correct order.

As a temporary fix, rerun the `ypserv -i` command several times. Each time the command is executed, more of the LDAP entry is built up.

---

**Note** – Mapping in such a way that all of an object's **MUST** attributes cannot be created from at least one map is *not* supported.

---

## N2L Server Timeout Issue

**Problem:** The server times out.

**Cause:** When the N2L server refreshes a map, the result might be a large LDAP directory access. If the Sun Java System Directory Server is not correctly configured, this operation might time out before completion.

**Solution:** To avoid directory server timeouts, modify the Sun Java System Directory Server attributes manually or by running the `idsconfig` command. See “[Common LDAP Error Messages](#)” on page 260 and “[NIS-to-LDAP Best Practices With Sun Java System Directory Server](#)” on page 257 for details.

## N2L Lock File Issue

**Problem:** The `ypserv` command starts but does not respond to NIS requests.

**Cause:** The N2L server lock files are not correctly synchronizing access to the NIS maps. This should never happen.

**Solution:** Type the following commands on the N2L server.

```
# svcadm disable network/nis/server:default
# rm /var/run/yp_maplock /var/run/yp_mapupdate
# svcadm enable network/nis/server:default
```

## N2L Deadlock Issue

**Problem:** The N2L server deadlocks.

**Cause:** If the addresses of the N2L master server and the LDAP server are not listed properly in the `hosts`, `ipnodes`, or `ypserv` files, a deadlock might result. See “[Prerequisites for the NIS-to-LDAP Transition](#)” on page 249 for details about proper address configuration for N2L.

For an example of a deadlock scenario, consider the following sequence of events:

1. An NIS client tries to look up an IP address.
2. The N2L server finds that the `hosts` entry is out-of-date.
3. The N2L server tries to update the `hosts` entry from LDAP.

4. The N2L server gets the name of its LDAP server from `ypserv`, then does a search by using `libldap`.
5. `libldap` tries to convert the LDAP server's name to an IP address by making a call to the name service switch.
6. The name service switch might make an NIS call to the N2L server, which deadlocks.

**Solution:** List the addresses of the N2L master server and the LDAP server in the `hosts` or `ipnodes` files on the N2L master server. Whether the server addresses must be listed in `hosts`, `ipnodes`, or both files depends on how these files are configured to resolve local host names. Also, check that the `hosts` and `ipnodes` entries in the `nsswitch.conf` file list `files` before `nis` in the lookup order.

An alternative solution to this deadlock problem is to list the LDAP server address, not its host name, in the `ypserv` file. This means that the LDAP server address would be listed in another place. Therefore, changing the address of either the LDAP server or the N2L server would require slightly more effort.

## Reverting to NIS

A site that has transitioned from NIS to LDAP using the N2L service is expected to gradually replace all NIS clients with Solaris LDAP naming services clients. Support for NIS clients eventually becomes redundant. However, if required, the N2L service provides two ways to return to traditional NIS, as explained in the next two procedures.

---

**Tip** – Traditional NIS ignores the N2L versions of the NIS maps if those maps are present. After reverting to NIS, if you leave the N2L versions of the maps on the server, the N2L maps do not cause problems. Therefore, it might be useful to keep the N2L maps in case you later decide to re-enable N2L. However, the maps do take up disk space.

---

### ▼ How to Revert to Maps Based on Old Source Files

#### 1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role.

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control \(Tasks\),” in \*System Administration Guide: Security Services\*](#).

#### 2 Stop the NIS daemons.

```
# svcadm disable network/nis/server:default
```



**3 Disable N2L.**

This command backs up and moves the N2L mapping file.

```
# mv /var/yp/NISLDAPmapping backup_filename
```

**4 Set the NOPUSH environment variable so the new maps are not pushed by ypmake.**

```
# NOPUSH=1
```

**5 Make a new set of NIS maps that are based on the old sources.**

```
# cd /var/yp
# make
```

**6 (Optional) Remove N2L versions of the NIS maps.**

```
# rm /var/yp/domainname/LDAP_*
```

**7 Start the NIS daemons.**

```
# svcadm enable network/nis/server:default
```

## ▼ How to Revert to Maps Based on Current DIT Contents

Back up the old NIS source files before performing this procedure.

**1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role.**

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [Chapter 9, “Using Role-Based Access Control \(Tasks\),” in \*System Administration Guide: Security Services\*](#).

**2 Stop the NIS daemons.**

```
# svcadm disable network/nis/server:default
```

**3 Update the maps from the DIT.**

```
# ypserv -r
```

Wait for ypserv to exit.

**4 Disable N2L.**

This command backs up and moves the N2L mapping file.

```
# mv /var/yp/NISLDAPmapping backup_filename
```

**5 Regenerate the NIS source files.**

```
# ypmake2src
```

**6 Manually check that regenerated NIS source files have the correct content and structure.**

**7 Move the regenerated NIS source files to the appropriate directories.**

**8 (Optional) Remove the N2L versions of the mapping files.**

```
# rm /var/yp/domainname/LDAP_*
```

**9 Start the NIS daemons.**

```
# svcadm enable network/nis/server:default
```



## PART V

# Active Directory Naming Service

This part describes the configuration and administration of the `ns_s_ad` naming service module. This naming service module enables a Solaris system to access user and group information from Active Directory (AD) servers in an AD domain.



# Setting Up Solaris Active Directory Clients

---

The `nss_ad` naming service module provides a back end for the `passwd`, `shadow`, and `group` files. The `nss_ad` module uses Active Directory (AD) and its native schema as the naming service to resolve user and group names and IDs from across an AD forest.

## Overview of the `nss_ad` Naming Service Module

The Solaris client must be joined to an AD domain before any of the AD interoperability functionality, including `nss_ad`, can be used. The `kclient` utility is used to join the client to AD. During the join operation, `kclient` configures Kerberos v5 on the client. Thereafter, `nss_ad` can be used to resolve naming service requests by specifying `ad` as a source in the `nsswitch.conf` file for the supported databases. The `nss_ad` module uses host credentials to look up naming service information in AD.

The `nss_ad` module uses DNS server records to auto-discover AD directory servers, such as domain controllers and global catalog servers. Therefore, DNS must be properly configured on the Solaris client. The `nss_ad` module also uses the LDAP v3 protocol to access naming information from AD servers. The AD server schema requires no modification because `nss_ad` works with the native AD schema.

The `nss_ad` module does not currently support logins of Windows users onto a Solaris system. Until such logins are supported, such users should continue to log in by using traditional back ends such as `nis` and `ldap`.

The `idmap` and `nscd` services must be enabled to use `nss_ad`. The `nss_ad` module uses the `idmap` service to map between Windows security identifiers (SIDs), Solaris user identifiers (UIDs), and group identifiers (GIDs).

Ensure that all AD user and group names are qualified with domain names such as `user@domain` or `group@domain`. For example, `getpwnam(dana)` will fail, but `getpwnam(dana@domain)` will succeed, provided that `dana` is a valid Windows user in the domain named `domain`.

The following additional rules also pertain to the nss\_ad module:

- Like AD, nss\_ad performs case-insensitive matching of user and group names.
- Only use the nss\_ad module in UTF-8 locales or in domains where users and groups have only ASCII characters in their names.
- Well-known SIDs are a set of SIDs that identify generic users or generic groups in the Windows world. They are not domain specific and their values remain constant across all Windows operating systems. The names of well-known SIDs are qualified with the string BUILTIN, for example, Remote Desktop Users@BUILTIN.
- The nss\_ad module does not support enumeration. Therefore, the getpwent() and getgrent() interfaces and commands that use them such as getent passwd and getent group cannot retrieve information from AD.
- The nss\_ad module currently supports only the passwd and group files. nss\_ad does not support other naming service databases that follow the passwd entry, such as audit\_user and user\_attr. If the ad back end is processed (based on the configuration), it returns NOT FOUND for these databases.

## Configuring the nss\_ad Naming Service Module

The nss\_ad module requires that the Solaris client use DNS for host resolution.

### ▼ How to Configure the nss\_ad Module

#### 1 Edit the /etc/resolv.conf file to point to the correct domain, using the correct search order.

Pointing to the correct DNS domain and servers in the /etc/resolv.conf file usually involves specifying the domain controller as the DNS server.

---

**Note** – The AD domain name must be specified in /etc/resolv.conf either by means of the domain directive or as the first item in the list specified by the search directive.

If both directives are specified, then whichever is last takes precedence. This is required for the idmap auto-discovery feature to work properly.

---

In the following example, the AD domain, ad.example, is specified by the domain directive. The dig commands verify that the AD server, which is specified by the nameserver directive, can be resolved by using its name and IP address.

```
% cat /etc/resolv.conf
domain ad.example
nameserver 192.168.11.22
% dig -x 192.168.11.22 +short
myserver.ad.example
```

```
% dig myserver.ad.example +short
192.168.11.22
```

- 2 **Edit the `etc/nsswitch.conf` file, and add `dns` to the list of naming services for `hosts` and `ipnodes`.**

For example, the file might look like the following:

```
% egrep '^hosts|^ipnodes' /etc/nsswitch.conf
hosts:      files dns
ipnodes:    files dns
```

---

**Note** – To include additional naming services such as `nis` or `ldap` for host resolution, add them after `dns` in the `/etc/nsswitch.conf` file.

---

- 3 **Verify that the DNS service is enabled and online.**

For example:

```
% svcs svc:/network/dns/client
STATE STIME FMRI
online Oct_14 svc:/network/dns/client:default
```

- 4 **Use the `kclient` utility to join the system to the AD domain.**

For example:

```
% /usr/sbin/kclient -T ms_ad
```

- 5 **Edit the `nsswitch.conf` file by adding `ad` to `passwd` and `group`.**

For example:

```
% egrep '^passwd|^group' /etc/nsswitch.conf
passwd: files nis ad
group:  files nis ad
```

---

**Note** – `/etc/nsswitch.ad` is a sample configuration file that can be copied to `/etc/nsswitch.conf`. It uses AD for `passwd` and `group`, DNS for host lookups, and `files` for the remaining databases. Because the AD naming service is not yet a complete Solaris solution, add other naming services as appropriate to the `nsswitch.conf` file.

---

- 6 **Enable the `idmap` service.**

```
% svcadm enable idmap
```

- 7 **Enable the `nscd` service.**

```
% svcs name-service-cache
STATE STIME FMRI
disabled 13:15:48 svc:/system/name-service-cache:default
```

```
% svcadm enable name-service-cache
```

---

**Note** – The `nscd` module automatically restarts whenever `/etc/nsswitch.conf` is changed.

---

## 8 Verify that you can access user and group information from AD.

For example:

```
% getent passwd 'test_user@example'  
test_user@example:x:2154266625:2154266626:test_user::
```

```
% getent passwd 2154266625  
test_user@example:x:2154266625:2154266626:test_user::
```

# Password Updates

The `passwd(4)` man page contains a list of valid formats for the `passwd` entry in the `nsswitch.conf` file. Adding `ad` to these configurations in the `nsswitch.conf` file is supported. However, changing AD user passwords through the `passwd` command is not supported. If found in the `passwd` entry during a password update, `ad` is skipped. Use the `kpasswd` command to update AD user passwords.

The `ad` search order can be added to existing valid `passwd` and `group` entries in `nsswitch.conf`. For example:

```
passwd: files ad  
group: files ad
```

# How the `nss_ad` Naming Service Module Retrieves Data From AD

The following section describes how the `nss_ad` module resolves naming service requests for the `passwd`, `shadow`, and `group` files by retrieving corresponding data from AD.

## Retrieving `passwd` Information

The following syntax shows the proper form of a `passwd` entry:

```
username:password:uid:gid:gecos:home-directory:login-shell
```

See the `passwd(4)` man page for more information.



The nss\_ad module retrieves passwd information from AD as follows:

- *username* – Field uses the value of the samAccountName AD attribute and is qualified by the domain name in which the object resides, for example, terryb@example.com.
- *password* – Field uses the value of x because the user password is not available in the AD object.
- *uid* – Field uses the Windows user's SID from the objectSID AD attribute, which is mapped to the UID by using the idmap service.
- *gid* – Field uses the Windows user's primary group SID, which is mapped to the GID by using the idmap service. The group SID is obtained by appending the value of the primaryGroupID AD attribute to the domain SID. For users in AD, the primaryGroupID attribute is an optional attribute, so it might not exist. If the attribute does not exist, nss\_ad uses the idmap diagonal mapping facility to map the user SID from the objectSID attribute.
- *gecos* – Value of the CN AD attribute.
- *home-directory* – Value of the homeDirectory AD attribute, if a value exists. Otherwise, the field is left empty.
- *login-shell* – Field is left empty because there is no login shell attribute in the native AD schema.

## Retrieving shadow Information

The following syntax shows the proper form of a shadow entry:

```
username:password:lastchg:min:max:warn:inactive:expire:flag
```

See the [shadow\(4\)](#) man page for more information.

The nss\_ad module retrieves shadow information from AD as follows:

- *username* – Field uses the value of the samAccountName AD attribute and is qualified by the domain name in which the object resides, for example, terryb@example.com.
- *password* – Field uses the value of \*NP\* because the user password is not available in the AD object.

The rest of the shadow fields are left empty because shadow fields are irrelevant with AD and Kerberos v5.

## Retrieving group Information

The following syntax shows the proper form of a group entry:

```
groupname:password:gid:user-list
```

See the [group\(4\)](#) for man page for more information.

The nss\_ad module retrieves information from AD as follows:

- *groupname* – Field uses the value of the `samAccountName` AD attribute and is qualified by the domain name in which the object resides, for example, `admins@example`.
- *password* – Field is left empty because the Windows groups do not have passwords.
- *gid* – Field uses the Windows group's SID from the `objectSID` AD attribute, which is mapped to the GID by using the `idmap` service.
- *user-list* – Field is left empty.

# Glossary

---

<b>application-level naming service</b>	Application-level naming services are incorporated in applications offering services such as files, mail, and printing. Application-level naming services are bound below enterprise-level naming services. The enterprise-level naming services provide contexts in which contexts of application-level naming services can be bound.
<b>attribute</b>	Each LDAP entry consists of a number of named <i>attributes</i> each of which has one or more values.  Also: The N2L service mapping and configuration files each consist of a number of named <i>attributes</i> each of which has one or more values.
<b>authentication</b>	The means by which a server can verify a client's identity.
<b>baseDN</b>	The DN where part of the DIT is rooted. When this is the baseDN for a NIS domains entries it is also referred to as a <i>context</i> .
<b>client</b>	(1) The client is a principal (machine or user) requesting an naming service from an naming server.  (2) In the client-server model for file systems, the client is a machine that remotely accesses resources of a compute server, such as compute power and large memory capacity.  (3) In the client-server model, the client is an <i>application</i> that accesses services from a “server process.” In this model, the client and the server can run on the same machine or on separate machines.
<b>client-server model</b>	A common way to describe network services and the model user processes (programs) of those services. Examples include the name-server/name-resolver paradigm of the <i>Domain Name System (DNS)</i> . See also <i>client</i> .
<b>context</b>	For the N2L service, a context is something under which a NIS domain is generally mapped. See also baseDN.
<b>credentials</b>	The authentication information that the client software sends along with each request to a naming server. This information verifies the identity of a user or machine.
<b>data encrypting key</b>	A key used to encipher and decipher data intended for programs that perform encryption. Contrast with <i>key encrypting key</i> .
<b>data encryption standard (DES)</b>	A commonly used, highly sophisticated algorithm developed by the U.S. National Bureau of Standards for encrypting and decrypting data. See also SUN-DES-1.
<b>databaseID</b>	For the N2L service, a databaseID is an alias for a group of maps containing NIS entries of the same format (having the same mappings to LDAP). The maps might have differing keys.

<b>DBM</b>	DBM is the database originally used to store NIS maps.
<b>decimal dotted notation</b>	The syntactic representation for a 32-bit integer that consists of four 8-bit numbers written in base 10 with periods (dots) separating them. Used to represent IP addresses in the Internet as in: 192.67.67.20.
<b>DES</b>	See <i>data encryption standard (DES)</i> .
<b>directory</b>	(1) An LDAP directory is a container for LDAP objects. In UNIX, a container for files and subdirectories.
<b>directory cache</b>	A local file used to store data associated with directory objects.
<b>directory information tree</b>	The DIT is the distributed directory structure for a given network. By default, Solaris LDAP clients access the information assuming that the DIT has a given structure. For each domain supported by the LDAP server, there is an assumed subtree with an assumed structure.
<b>distinguished name</b>	A distinguished name is an entry in an X.500 directory information base (DIB) composed of selected attributes from each entry in the tree along a path leading from the root down to the named entry.
<b>DIT</b>	See <i>directory information tree</i> .
<b>DN</b>	A distinguished name in LDAP. A tree-like structured addressing scheme of the LDAP directory which gives a unique name to each LDAP entry.
<b>DNS</b>	See <i>Domain Name System</i> .
<b>DNS-forwarding</b>	An NIS server forwards requests it cannot answer to DNS servers.
<b>DNS zone files</b>	A set of files wherein the DNS software stores the names and IP addresses of all the workstations in a domain.
<b>DNS zones</b>	Administrative boundaries within a network domain, often made up of one or more subdomains.
<b>domain</b>	(1) In the Internet, a part of a naming hierarchy usually corresponding to a Local Area Network (LAN) or Wide Area Network (WAN) or a portion of such a network. Syntactically, an Internet domain name consists of a sequence of names (labels) separated by periods (dots). For example, sales.doc.com.  (2) In International Organization for Standardization's open systems interconnection (OSI), "domain" is generally used as an administrative partition of a complex distributed system, as in MHS private management domain (PRMD), and directory management domain (DMD).
<b>domain name</b>	The name assigned to a group of systems on a local network that share DNS administrative files. The domain name is required for the network information service database to work properly. See also <i>domain</i> .
<b>Domain naming service (DNS)</b>	A service that provides the naming policy and mechanisms for mapping domain and machine names to addresses outside of the enterprise, such as those on the Internet. DNS is the network information service used by the Internet.
<b>encryption</b>	The means by which the privacy of data is protected.
<b>encryption key</b>	See <i>data encrypting key</i> .

---

<b>enterprise-level network</b>	An “enterprise-level” network can be a single Local Area Network (LAN) communicating over cables, infra-red beams, or radio broadcast; or a cluster of two or more LANs linked together by cable or direct phone connections. Within an enterprise-level network, every machine is able to communicate with every other machine without reference to a global naming service such as DNS or X.500/LDAP.
<b>entry</b>	A single row of data in a database table, such as an LDAP element in a DIT.
<b>field</b>	A NIS map entry might consist of a number of components and separator characters. As part of the N2L service mapping process the entry is first broken down into a number of named <i>fields</i> .
<b>GID</b>	See <i>group ID</i> .
<b>global naming service</b>	A global naming service identifies (names) those enterprise-level networks around the world that are linked together by phone, satellite, or other communication systems. This world-wide collection of linked networks is known as the “Internet.” In addition to naming networks, a global naming service also identifies individual machines and users within a given network.
<b>group ID</b>	A number that identifies the default <i>group</i> for a user.
<b>indexed name</b>	A naming format used to identify an entry in a table.
<b>Internet address</b>	A 32-bit address assigned to hosts using <i>TCP/IP</i> . See <i>decimal dotted notation</i> .
<b>IP</b>	Internet Protocol. The <i>network layer</i> protocol for the Internet protocol suite.
<b>IP address</b>	A unique number that identifies each host in a network.
<b>key (encrypting)</b>	A key used to encipher and decipher other keys, as part of a key management and distribution system. Contrast with <i>data encrypting key</i> .
<b>key server</b>	A Solaris operating environment process that stores private keys.
<b>LDAP</b>	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol is a standard, extensible directory access protocol used by LDAP naming service clients and servers to communicate with each other.
<b>local-area network (LAN)</b>	Multiple systems at a single geographical site connected together for the purpose of sharing and exchanging data and software.
<b>mail exchange records</b>	Files that contain a list of DNS domain names and their corresponding mail hosts.
<b>mail hosts</b>	A workstation that functions as an email router and receiver for a site.
<b>mapping</b>	The process of converting NIS entries to or from DIT entries. This process is controlled by a <i>mapping</i> file.
<b>master server</b>	The server that maintains the master copy of the network information service database for a particular domain. Namespace changes are always made to the naming service database kept by the domain's master server. Each domain has only <i>one</i> master server.
<b>MIS</b>	Management information systems (or services).
<b>N2L server</b>	NIS-to-LDAP server. An NIS master server that has been reconfigured as an N2L server by using the N2L service. Reconfiguration includes replacing NIS daemons and adding new configuration files.

<b>name resolution</b>	The process of translating workstation or user names to addresses.
<b>name server</b>	Servers that run one or more network naming services.
<b>namespace</b>	(1) A namespace stores information that users, workstations, and applications must have to communicate across the network.  (2) The set of all names in a naming system.
<b>naming service</b>	A network service that handles machine, user, printer, domain, router, an other network names and addresses.
<b>naming service switch</b>	A configuration file ( <code>/etc/nsswitch.conf</code> ) that defines the sources from which an naming client can obtain its network information.
<b>NDBM</b>	NDBM is an improved version of DBM.
<b>network mask</b>	A number used by software to separate the local subnet address from the rest of a given Internet protocol address.
<b>network password</b>	See Secure RPC password.
<b>NIS</b>	A distributed network information service containing key information about the systems and the users on the network. The NIS database is stored on the <i>master server</i> and all the <i>replica</i> or <i>slave servers</i> .
<b>NIS maps</b>	A file used by NIS that holds information of a particular type, for example, the password entries of all users on a network or the names of all host machines on a network. Programs that are part of the NIS service query these maps. See also <i>NIS</i> .
<b>preferred server list</b>	A <code>client_info</code> table or a <code>client_info</code> file. Preferred server lists specify the preferred servers for a client or domain.
<b>private key</b>	The private component of a pair of mathematically generated numbers, which, when combined with a private key, generates the DES key. The DES key in turn is used to encode and decode information. The private key of the sender is only available to the owner of the key. Every user or machine has its own public and private key pair.
<b>public key</b>	The public component of a pair of mathematically generated numbers, which, when combined with a private key, generates the DES key. The DES key in turn is used to encode and decode information. The public key is available to all users and machines. Every user or machine has their own public and private key pair.
<b>RDN</b>	Relative Distinguished Name. One part of a DN.
<b>record</b>	See <i>entry</i> .
<b>remote procedure call (RPC)</b>	An easy and popular paradigm for implementing the client-server model of distributed computing. A request is sent to a remote system to execute a designated procedure, using arguments supplied, and the result is returned to the caller.
<b>reverse resolution</b>	The process of converting workstation IP addresses to workstation names using the DNS software.

---

<b>RFC 2307</b>	RFC specifying a mapping of information from the standard NIS maps to DIT entries. By default, the N2L service implements the mapping specified in an updated version RFC 2307bis.
<b>RPC</b>	See <a href="#">remote procedure call (RPC)</a> .
<b>SASL</b>	The simple authentication and security layer. A framework for negotiating authentication and security layer semantics in application-layer protocols.
<b>schema</b>	A set of rules defining what types of data can be stored in any given LDAP DIT.
<b>searchTriple</b>	A description of where to look for a given attribute in the DIT. The searchTriple is composed of a 'base dn', 'scope' and 'filter'. This is part of the LDAP URL format as defined in RFC 2255.
<b>Secure RPC password</b>	Password required by Secure RPC protocol. This password is used to encrypt the private key. This password should always be identical to the user's login password.
<b>server</b>	<p>(1) In NIS, DNS, and LDAP a host machine providing naming services to a network.</p> <p>(2) In the <i>client-server model</i> for file systems, the server is a machine with computing resources (and is sometimes called the compute server), and large memory capacity. Client machines can remotely access and make use of these resources. In the client-server model for window systems, the server is a process that provides windowing services to an application, or "client process." In this model, the client and the server can run on the same machine or on separate machines.</p> <p>(3) A <i>daemon</i> that actually handles the providing of files.</p>
<b>server list</b>	See preferred server list.
<b>slave server</b>	A server system that maintains a copy of the NIS database. It has a disk and a complete copy of the operating environment.
<b>source</b>	NIS source files
<b>SSL</b>	SSL is the secure sockets layer protocol. It is a generic transport-layer security mechanism designed to make application protocols such as LDAP secure.
<b>subnet</b>	A working scheme that divides a single logical network into smaller physical networks to simplify routing.
<b>suffix</b>	In LDAP, the distinguished name (DN) of the DIT.
<b>TCP</b>	See <a href="#">Transport Control Protocol (TCP)</a> .
<b>TCP/IP</b>	Acronym for Transport Control Protocol/Interface Program. The protocol suite originally developed for the Internet. It is also called the <i>Internet</i> protocol suite. Solaris networks run on TCP/IP by default.
<b>Transport Control Protocol (TCP)</b>	The major transport protocol in the Internet suite of protocols providing reliable, connection-oriented, full-duplex streams. Uses IP for delivery. See TCP/IP.
<b>Transport Layer Security (TLS)</b>	TLS secures communication between an LDAP client and the directory server, providing both privacy and data integrity. The TLS protocol is a super set of the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol.
<b>wide-area network (WAN)</b>	A network that connects multiple local-area networks (LANs) or systems at different geographical sites by phone, fiber-optic, or satellite links.

**X.500** A global-level directory service defined by an Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) standard. A precursor to LDAP.

**yp** Yellow Pages™. The old name for NIS which is still used within the NIS code.



# Index

---

## Numbers and Symbols

- +/- Syntax
  - compat, 44
  - nsswitch.conf file, 44
- \$PWDIR/security/passwd.adjunct, 104

## A

- access control information, 145
- account management
  - configuring on directory server, 182
  - enableShadowUpdate switch, 154
  - for LDAP clients that use pam\_ldap, 182-184
  - for LDAP clients that use pam\_unix, 184-186
  - LDAP server for pam\_unix clients, 159-160
  - LDAP supported features, 157-160
  - PAM modules and LDAP, 157-160
- Active Directory, 267
  - AD naming service, 269
  - configuring nss\_ad, 270
  - retrieving
    - group information, 273
    - passwd information, 272
    - shadow information, 273
  - setting up clients, 269
  - updating passwords, 272
- adjunct files, 89
- aliases files, 88
- .asc, 111
- Attribute map, 140
- Attributes, internet print protocol, 228-235

- authentication
  - digest-MD5, 150
  - simple, 150
- authentication methods
  - choosing in LDAP, 150-153
  - none, 150
  - PAM modules, 153-157
  - services in LDAP, 152-153
- auto\_direct.time maps, 105
- auto\_home table, nsswitch.conf file and, 37
- auto\_home.time maps, 105
- auto\_master table, nsswitch.conf file and, 37
- awk, 111

## B

- browsing indices, 172

## C

- CHKPIPE, 107
- client-server model, 275
- clients
  - NIS, 73-74
  - NIS setup, 95-96
- Credential Levels, LDAP client, 147
- Credential Storage, LDAP client, 149
- credentials, 275
- crontab, NIS, problems, 125
- crontab file, 109
- crontab files, NIS, problems, 125

**D**

## daemons

- list of NIS, 74-75
- NIS, 74-75
- NIS, not running, 124
- NIS, starting, 92
- nscd, 43

data encrypting key, 275

data population, 166

dbm, 111, 112

decimal dotted notation, 276

defaultdomain files, 86

DES, 275, 276

DIR directory, 88

directory, 276

directory cache, 276

Directory Information Tree, 137-138, 276

directory server, migration, 186

distinguished name, 276

DNS, 29, 276

- NIS, and, 71

- NIS and, 72, 116-117

- nsswitch.conf file, 43

- nsswitch.conf file and, 34

DNS-forwarding, 276

dns-sd command, 66

DNS service discovery, 29, 65

DNS zone files, 276

DNS zones, 276

DOM variable, 91

domain, 276

domain name, 276

domainname, 91, 93

domains

- NIS, 72, 74, 85

- NIS, multiple, 91

**E**

enableShadowUpdate switch, 154

encryption key, 276

enterprise-level network, 277

entry, 277

/etc/defaultdomain files, 86, 121

/etc files, 29, 75

/etc/hosts, 24, 94

/etc/inet/ipnodes, 24

/etc/mail/aliases files, 88

/etc/mail directory, 88

/etc/nodename files, 86

/etc/nsswitch.conf

- modifying the switch, 42

- nscd daemon and, 43

/etc/nsswitch.files file, 41

/etc/nsswitch.ldap file, 41

/etc/nsswitch.nis file, 41

/etc/nsswitch.nisplus file, 41

**F**

files-based naming, 30

FMRI

- LDAP, 49, 188

- NIS, 84

FQDN, 137

ftp, 125

**G**

getaddrinfo(), name service switch and, 33

gethostbyname(), name service switch and, 33

getpwnam(), name service switch and, 33

getpwuid(), name service switch and, 33

getxbyY(), 33

GID, 277

global naming service, 277

group ID, 277

groups

- netgroups (NIS), 100-101, 101

**H**

hosts (machines)

- NIS clients, 73-74

- NIS domains, changing, 115

- NIS servers, 73-74

hosts.byaddr, 75  
 hosts.byname, 75  
 hosts.byname maps, 75  
 hosts database, 107  
 hosts files, 94

## I

in.named, 29  
 index LDAP client attributes, 171  
 indexed name, 277  
 inityp2l script, 245,247  
 Internet  
   NIS and, 72  
   nsswitch.conf file, 43  
 Internet address, 277  
 IP, 277  
 IP address, 277  
 IPv6, nsswitch.conf file, 43-44

## K

key (encrypting), 277  
 key server, 277  
 keyserver, nsswitch.conf file and, 38

## L

LAN, 277  
 LDAP  
   account management, 157-160  
   comparing supported PAM modules, 155,156  
   enabling account management on client, 193-194  
   enabling account management on directory  
     server, 182  
   reverting to NIS, 264-266  
   Service Management Facility, 188-189  
   transitioning from NIS, 243-266  
   troubleshooting, 203-208  
 ldap\_cachemgr daemon, 143  
 LDAP schema, role based attributes, 227  
 LDAP schema role based, object classes, 228

LDAP schemas, 209-242  
 LDAP troubleshooting  
   ldapclient cannot bind to server, 207  
   login fails, 206  
   lookup too slow, 207  
   unable to reach systems in LDAP domain  
     remotely, 206  
     unresolved hostname, 206  
 ldapaddent command, 179  
 LDIF, 133  
 log for mDNS, 66  
 ls, 120

## M

mail exchange records, 277  
 mail hosts, 277  
 Mailgroups  
   attributes, 223  
   object class, 223  
 make  
   after updating maps, 108  
   C2 security and, 114  
   Makefile syntax, 105  
   NIS maps, 78  
 make command  
   description, 80  
   ypinit and, 91  
 makedbm, 107,111,112  
   changing map server, 103  
 makedbm command  
   adding slave servers, 113  
   description, 75,80  
   make command and, 76  
   Makefile and, 89  
   ypinit and, 91  
 Makefile file  
   automounter maps and, 105  
   changing a map's master server, 103  
   changing source directory, 86,89  
   conversion to NIS and, 88  
   maps  
     supported list, 104  
   NIS, 76

**Makefile file (Continued)**

- NIS security, 98
- non-default maps
  - modifying, 111
- passwd maps and, 89
- preparing, 89
- setting up primary server, 91

mapname.dir files, 89

mapname.pag files, 89

mapping file, NIS to LDAP, 243

master server, 277

mDNS, 29

mDNS deployment, 65

migration, directory server, 186

MIS, 277

multicast DNS, 29, 65

**N**

N2L server, 243, 246-247

N2L service, 243

- custom map examples, 255-256
- setting up, 250-256
- supported mappings, 247
- when not to use, 245

N2L transition, *See* NIS to LDAP transition

name resolution, 278

name server, 278

name space, DNS, 29

namespace, 278

naming, 23-29

- Active Directory (AD), 267
- DNS, 29
- files-based, 30
- NIS, 30
- Solaris naming services, 29-30

naming service, 278

naming service switch, 278

ndbm, 75, 89

ndbm file, changing map server, 103

netgroup.byhost file, 100

netgroup.byuser file, 100

netgroup file, 100

- entries, example, 101

network diagnosis for mDNS, 66

network mask, 278

network password, 278

network services, 65

nicknames files, 79

NIS, 30, 71-72, 278

- architecture, 72
- automatic starting, 92
- binding, 81-82
  - binding, broadcast, 81
  - binding, server-list, 81
  - binding manually, 115
- broadcast binding, 81-82
- C2 security, 114
- client problems, 120-123
- client setup, 95-96
- clients, 73-74
- commands hang, 120
- components, 74-80
- daemons, 74-75
  - daemons, not running, 124
  - daemons, starting, 92
- DNS, and, 72
- DNS and, 116-117
- domain names, 85
- domains, 72, 74
- domains, multiple, 91
- halting, 117
- Internet and, 72
- list of daemons, 74-75
- Makefile, 76
- Makefile filtering, 105
- makefile preparation, 89
- master servers, 73
- modifying configuration files, 104
- ndbm format, 75
- netgroups, 100-101, 101
- “not responding” messages, 119
- overloaded servers and, 123
- passwd maps auto update, 109
- password data, 86
- passwords, user, 100
- problems, 119-126
- restarting, command line, 93

NIS (*Continued*)

- root entry, 98
  - rpc.yppasswdd, 100
  - security, 97-98
  - server binding not possible, 122
  - server-list binding, 81
  - servers, 73-74
  - servers, malfunction, 123
  - servers, maps different versions, 124-125
  - servers not available, 121
  - Service Management Facility, 84-85
  - setup, preparation for, 84, 86
  - slave server setup, 93-95
  - slave servers, 73
  - source files, 86, 87-88
  - starting, 92-93
  - starting, command line, 92
  - stopping, 117
  - stopping, command line, 93
  - structure of, 72
  - “unavailable” messages, 119
  - updating passwd maps, 99
  - user password locked, 99
  - useradd, 98
  - userdel, 99
  - users, administering, 98-101
  - utility programs, 75
  - /var/yp/, 76
  - ypbind “can’t” messages, 119
  - ypbind daemon, 81
  - ypbind fails, 122-123
  - ypinit, 90
  - ypservers file, 113
  - ypwhich, 82
  - ypwhich inconsistent displays, 121-122
- NIS clients, not bound to server, 121
- NIS domain names
- incorrect, 120-121
  - missing, 120-121
- NIS domains, changing, 115
- NIS hosts, changing domain of, 115
- NIS maps, 278
- administering, 101-107
  - changing server, 103-104

NIS maps (*Continued*)

- CHKPIPE in Makefile, 107
  - commands related to, 79-80
  - default, 76-78
  - displaying contents, 102
  - displaying contents of, 79
  - format is ndbm, 75
  - locating, 79
  - Makefile, DIR variable, 106
  - Makefile, DOM variable, 106
  - Makefile, PWDIR variable, 106
  - Makefile and, 105-106
  - Makefile filtering, 105
  - Makefile macros, changing, 105-106
  - Makefile variables, changing, 105-106
  - making, 78
  - modifying configuration files, 104
  - new maps, creating from files, 111
  - new maps, creating from keyboard, 112
  - nicknames, 79
  - nondefault, 108
  - NOPUSH in Makefile, 107
  - updating, 78-79
  - /var/yp/, 76
  - working with, 78-79
  - yppush in Makefile, 107
- NIS slave servers
- adding, 113-114
  - initializing, 114
- NIS-to-LDAP
- Service Management Facility
  - See also* NIS, LDAP
- NIS to LDAP transition, 243-266
- See also* N2L
  - buffer overruns, 259
  - commands, 247
  - configuration files, 247
  - deadlock, 264
  - debugging the NISLDAPmapping file, 261-263
  - hosts file configuration, 249
  - ipnodes file configuration, 249
  - issues, 261-264
  - LDAP error codes, 260-261
  - lock files, 263

NIS to LDAP transition (*Continued*)

- nsswitch.conf file configuration, 249
- prerequisites, 249
- restrictions, 259
- reverting to NIS, 264-266
- server timeouts, 258-259, 263
- terminology, 246-247
- troubleshooting, 260-264
- using `idsconfig` command, 249
- using virtual list views (VLVs), 257-258
- with Sun Java System Directory Server, 257-259

NISLDAPmapping file, 243, 247

nodenamefiles, 86

NOPUSH in `Makefile`, 107

“not responding” messages (NIS), 119

nscd daemon, 43

nsswitch.conf and mDNS, 66

nsswitch.conf file, 37

- +/- Syntax, 44

- actions, 36

- Auto\_home table, 37

- Auto\_master table, 37

- choosing a file, 42-43

- comments in, 37-38

- compat, 44

- default file, 41-42

- default files, 41

- default template files, 39-41

- DNS and, 34, 43

- format of, 34

- incorrect syntax, 37

- installation of, 42-43

- Internet access, 43

- introduction, 33

- IPv6 and, 43-44

- keyserver entry, 38

- messages, 35-36

- missing entries, 37

- modifying, 36

- modifying the switch, 42

- NOTFOUND=continue, 36

- nscd daemon and, 43

- nsswitch.files file, 39

- nsswitch.files file and, 38

nsswitch.conf file (*Continued*)

- nsswitch.nis file, 38

- options, 36

- password data and, 44

- publickey entry, 38

- search criteria, 35, 36-37

- status messages, 35-36, 36

- SUCCESS=return, 36

- templates, 33, 38-42

- timezone table, 37

- TRYAGAIN=continue, 36

- UNAVAIL=continue, 36

- updating, 44

nsswitch.conf files, 29, 84

- NIS, 72

nsswitch.files file, 41

nsswitch.ldap file, 41

nsswitch.nis file, 41

nsswitch.nisplus file, 41

**O**

objectClass Map, 140

**P**

pam\_ldap, account management in LDAP, 182-184

PAM modules

- authentication methods, 153-157

- LDAP, 153-157

pam\_unix

- account management in LDAP, 159-160, 184-186

passwd, 100

- NIS map auto updated, 109

passwd.adjunct file, 89, 100, 104, 114

passwd file, Solaris 1.x formats, 98

passwd map, 86

passwd maps, users, adding, 99

password -r command, 44

password data

- NIS, 86

- NIS, and, 97-98

- nsswitch.conf file, 44

password data (*Continued*)  
 root in NIS maps, 98  
 password entry, enableShadowUpdate switch, 149  
 password management, *See* account management  
 passwords  
   LDAP, and, 156  
   NIS, and, 100  
   rpc.yppasswdd (NIS), 100  
 per-user credentials, 148  
 per-user index level, 147  
 ping, 123  
 Pluggable Authentication Modules, 153-157  
 private key, 278  
 Profiles, LDAP client, 141  
 Project  
   attributes, 226  
   object class, 226  
 proxy anonymous credential level, 147  
 proxy anonymous credentials, 148  
 proxy credential level, 147  
 proxy credentials, 147  
 public key, 278  
 PWDIR, 87  
 PWDIR/security/passwd.adjunct file, 114  
 /PWDIR/shadow file, 89  
 /PWDR/security/passwd.adjunct, 89

## R

rcp, 93, 125  
 record, 278  
 Referrals, 171  
 repositories, using multiple, 44  
 repository, updating, 44  
 reverse resolution, 278  
 reverting to NIS from LDAP, 264-266  
 RFC 2307  
   attributes, 217  
   object classes, 221  
 RPC, 278, 279  
 rpc.yppasswdd, 100  
   passwd updates maps, 109  
 rpc.yppasswdd daemon, description, 74  
 rpc.yppupdated daemon, description, 74

## S

schema, Project, 226  
 schema mapping, 138  
 Schemas  
   directory user agent, 224  
   mail alias, 223  
   RFC 2307, 217  
 Secure RPC password, 279  
 security  
   C2 security  
     NIS and, 114  
     NIS, 86  
     NIS, and, 97-98  
     root in NIS maps, 98  
 sed, 111  
 self credential level, 147  
 server, 279  
 server list, 279  
 servers  
   NIS, preparing, 86  
   NIS slave setup, 93-95  
   not available (NIS), 121  
   ypservers file, 113  
 service discovery, 65  
 Service Management Facility  
   *See* SMF  
   and LDAP, 188-189  
   and NIS, 84-85  
   and NIS-to-LDAP tools  
     *See also* NIS, LDAP  
 Service Search Descriptors, 139  
 service search descriptors, definition, 172  
 setup  
   multiple NIS domains, 91  
   NIS, starting, 92-93  
   NIS clients, 95-96  
   NIS makefile, 89  
   NIS setup, preparation for, 84, 86  
   NIS slave servers, 93-95  
   switch files, 41  
 shadow file, 89  
   Solaris 1.x formats, 98  
 sites.byname file, changing map server, 103  
 slave server, 279

- SMF, 92, 93
- Solaris naming services, 29-30
- SSDs, 139
- SSL protocol, 146
- subnet, 279
- Sun Java System Directory Server
  - migration, 186
  - setup using `idsconfig`, 170
- Sun Java system server setup, load data into directory server, 179-180
- svcadm, with NIS, 114

## T

- TCP, 279
- TCP/IP, 279
- timezone table, 37
- transitioning NIS to LDAP, 243-266
- Transport Control Protocol, 279
- Transport Layer Security, 146, 279

## U

- “unavailable” messages (NIS), 119
- `useradd`, 98
  - password is locked, 99
- `userdel`, 99
- users
  - netgroups, 100-101, 101
  - NIS, 98-101
  - passwords (NIS), 100
  - updating `passwd` maps, 99
  - `useradd`, 98
  - `userdel` (NIS), 99
- `/usr/sbin/makedbm`, non-default maps, modifying, 111

## V

- `/var/spool/cron/crontabs/root` files, NIS, problems, 125
- `/var/yp`, 120

- `/var/yp/`, 76, 111
- `/var/yp/` directory, 89
- `/var/yp/binding/` files, 121
- `/var/yp` directories, NIS security, 98
- `/var/yp` directory, 86, 89, 94
- `/var/yp/Makefile`, 91
  - maps
    - supported list, 104
- `/var/yp/nicknames` files, 79

## W

- WAN, 279

## X

- X.500, 280

## Y

- `ypbind` daemon
  - adding slave servers, 114
  - broadcast mode, 81, 95
  - “can’t” messages, 119
  - client not bound, 121
  - description, 74, 80
  - fails, 122-123
  - overloaded servers and, 123
  - server-list mode, 81
  - starting NIS, 92
- `ypcat`, 79
- `ypcat` command
  - description, 75, 80
- `ypinit` command
  - adding slave servers, 114
  - client setup, 95
  - default maps, 108
  - description, 75, 80
  - initializing a slave server, 93-95
  - make command and, 91
  - Makefile file and, 89
  - master server setup, 90



- ypinit command (*Continued*)
  - slave servers and, 93
  - starting ypserv, 92
- ypmap2src script, 245, 247
- ypmatch command
  - description, 75, 80
- yppoll command, description, 75
- yppush command
  - changing map server, 103
  - description, 75, 80
  - Makefile and, 107
- yppush command, NIS problems, 125
- ypserv, 81
  - failure of, 126
- ypserv command, broadcast mode, 82
- ypserv daemon, 92
  - description, 74, 79
  - overloaded servers and, 123
- ypserv file, 247
- ypservers file
  - adding slave server, 113
  - creating, 113
- ypservers maps, NIS problems, 125
- ypset command
  - description, 75, 80
- ypstart script, 100
- ypwhich
  - display inconsistent, 121-122
  - identifying bound server, 82
- ypwhich command
  - description, 75, 80
  - identifying master server, 79
- ypxfr command
  - changing map server, 103, 104
  - description, 75, 80
  - distributing new maps to slave servers, 111
  - logging output, 125
  - shell script, 125
- ypxfrd daemon, description, 74
- ypxfrfd daemon, description, 80

